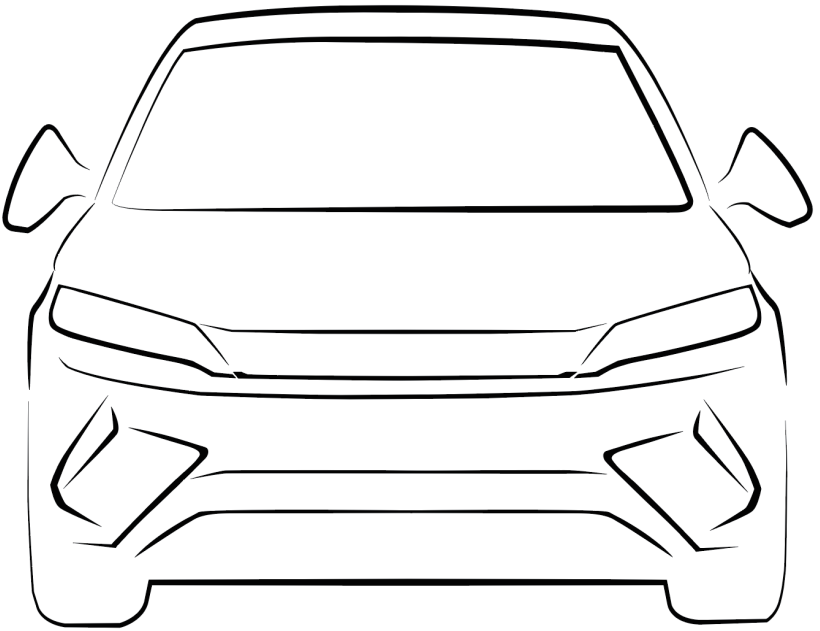
BYD ATTO 2

OWNER'S MANUAL



Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

Descriptions marked with an asterisk (*) in this manual are applicable to some models only and attached pictures belong to one of the configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "WARNING", "CAUTION" and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Sustainability

As a pure electric passenger vehicle, BYD ATTO 2 is an environmentally friendly product. Please visit https://reach.bydeurope.com for environmental protection information about the vehicle.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Contact Us

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer service center.

E-mail: Autoservice.contact@byd.com

Call 00800-10203000 for 24/7 roadside assistance or customer service center (9:00-18:00 Monday-Saturday).

Copyright © BYD Auto Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

Copyright © BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorization of BYD Auto Co., Ltd. and BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Illustration Index

Exterior.....7
Dashboard..... 8
Center Console.....9
Doors..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Using Seat Belts.....12
Airbags..... 14
Airbag Overview..... 14
Airbag Types..... 16
Airbag Triggering Conditions..... 18
Child Restraint Systems..... 21
Child Restraint Systems..... 21
Anti-theft Alarm System.....26
Anti-theft Alarm System.....26
Data Collection and Processing..... 26
Data Collection and Processing.....26

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 32
Instrument Cluster View.....32
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....33

Controller Operations

Doors and Keys.....44
Keys.....44
Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 48
Smart Access and Start System..... 54
Child Protection Lock.....55
Seats.....56
Seat Precautions..... 56
Adjusting Front Seats..... 57
Folding Rear Seats.....58
Head Supports.....58
Steering Wheel..... 59
Steering Wheel Switches.....59
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....62
Wipers..... 62
Wiper Switch.....62
Wipers..... 64
Rearview Mirrors..... 65
Interior Rearview Mirror.....65
Side Mirrors.....66
Switches..... 67
Light Switches..... 67
Driver's Door Switches..... 69
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 71
Hazard Warning Light Switch.....71
Mode Switches..... 72
Front Passenger Airbag Switch..... 72
Emergency Call (E-Call).....73
Panoramic Glass Roof..... 74
Interior Light Switch.....75

Using and Driving

Charging/Discharging.....78
Charging Instructions.....78
Charging.....82
Discharging Device*..... 90
Charging Port Immobilizer System.....92
Driving Range Display*.....93
Energy Regeneration Settings..... 93

Batteries..... 94
High-Voltage Battery..... 94
Low-Voltage Battery..... 96
Usage Precautions..... 99
Break-in Period..... 99
Trailer Towing*..... 99
Driving Safety Precautions..... 100
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 100
Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 101
Carrying Luggage..... 102
Wading into Water..... 104
Fire Prevention..... 105
Starting and Driving..... 106
Starting the Vehicle..... 106
Auto Power On/Off*..... 107
Driving..... 108
Gear Shift Controls..... 108
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)..... 110
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 112
Driving Precautions..... 113
Driver Assistance..... 116
Driver Assistance System..... 116
Driving Assist*..... 122
Forward Safety Assist*..... 133
Side Safety Assist*..... 144
Rear Safety Assist*..... 153
Driver Monitoring System (DMS)..... 158
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)..... 159
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 160
Around View Monitor (AVM)-Configuration 1..... 161
Around View Monitor (AVM)-Configuration 2..... 163
Parking Assistance..... 165
Driving Safety Systems..... 168
Other Main Functions..... 173

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System..... 176
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 176
Infotainment System Screen..... 177
Settings*..... 177
Gestures and Responses..... 178
OTA Upgrade*..... 179
BYD Assistant..... 179
Bluetooth Call..... 180
File Management..... 180
Phone Projection*..... 181
A/C System..... 187
A/C Panel..... 187
A/C Operation Interface..... 187
Function Definition..... 188
A/C Settings..... 190
Vents..... 191
BYD App*..... 191
About BYD App*..... 191
Account Registration*..... 191
Vehicle Condition and Control*..... 192
Individual Center and Vehicle Management*..... 192
Storage..... 192
Door Bins..... 192
Eyeglass Case..... 193
Glove Box..... 193
Center Console Cubby..... 193
Seatback Pockets..... 193
Cup Holder..... 194

Other Devices..... 194
Sun Visor..... 194
Grab Handles..... 194
USB Ports..... 195
SD Card Slot..... 195
12 V Auxiliary Power..... 196
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 196
Cargo Cover*..... 198

Maintenance

Maintenance Information..... 200
Maintenance Cycle and Items..... 200
Regular Maintenance..... 202
Regular Maintenance..... 202
Corrosion Prevention..... 203
Paint Maintenance Tips..... 203
Vehicle Cleaning..... 204
Interior Cleaning..... 206
Self-Maintenance..... 207
Self-Maintenance..... 207
Vehicle Storage..... 209
Hood..... 210
Cooling System..... 210
Braking System..... 211
Washer..... 212
A/C System..... 212
Wiper Blades..... 212
Tires..... 213
Fuses..... 216

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur..... 218
Reflective Vest..... 218
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted..... 218
Emergency Shutdown System..... 218
If a Collision Occurs..... 219
If the High-Voltage Battery Leaks..... 219
If a Fire Occurs..... 220
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 220
If a Tire Goes Flat..... 222

Specifications

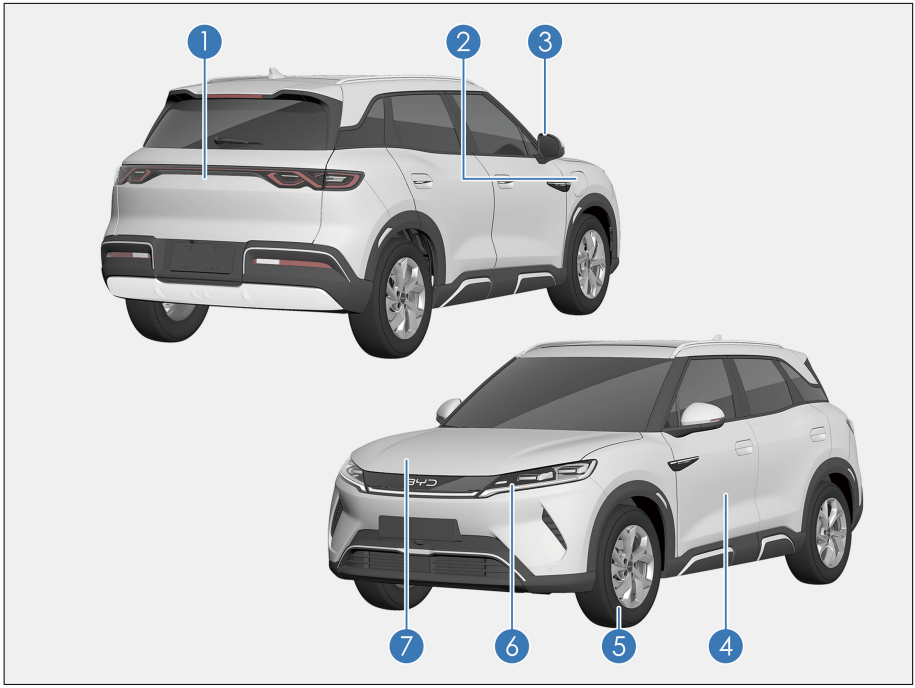
Vehicle Data..... 228
Specifications..... 228
Vehicle Identification..... 231
Other Information..... 232
Warning Labels..... 232
Transponder Mounting Position..... 234
Declarations of Conformity..... 234
Declarations of Conformity..... 235

Abbreviations

Abbreviations..... 243

Illustration Index

Exterior



1 Trunk ***P52***

2 Using Mode 2 Charging Cable ***P82***

Using AC Charging Piles* ***P85***

Using DC Chargers ***P86***

3 Side Mirrors ***P66***

4 Doors ***P49***

5 Tire ***P213***

If a Tire Goes Flat ***P222***

6 Combination Light ***P67***

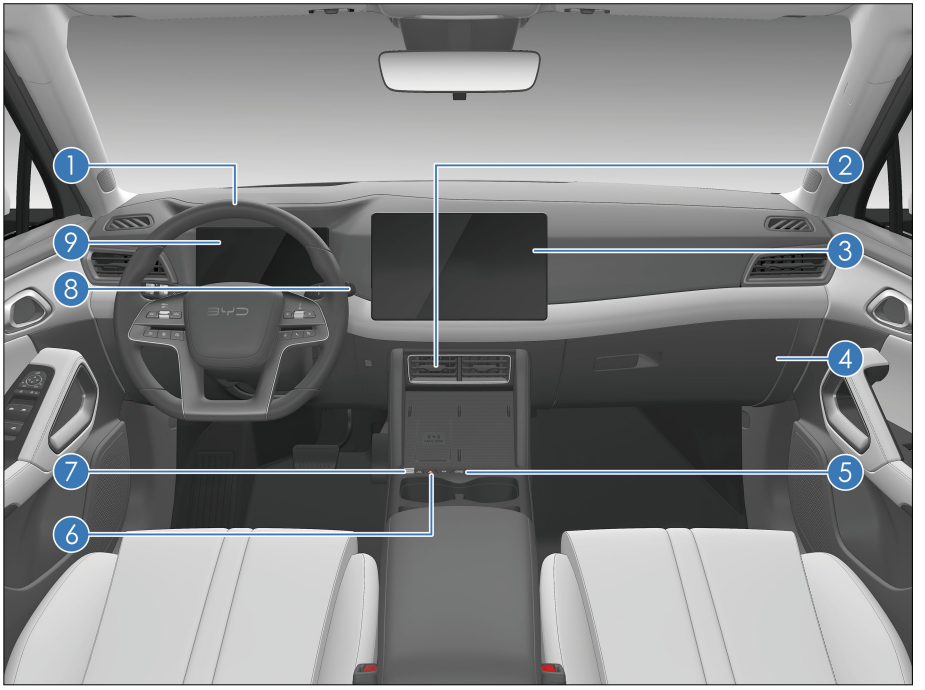
7 Opening the Hood ***P210***

Coolant ***P210***

Brake Fluid ***P211***

Washer ***P212***

Dashboard



1 Adjusting the Steering Wheel ***P62***
Steering Wheel Switches ***P59***

2 Front vents ***P191***

3 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P176***

4 Glove Box ***P193***

5 START/STOP Button ***P106***

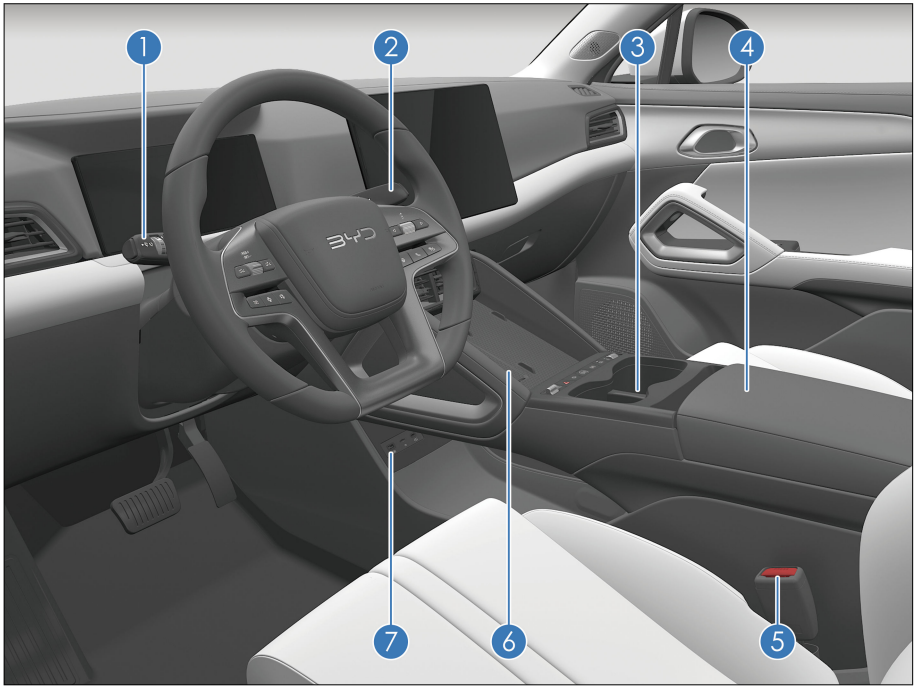
6 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P71***

7 Mode Switches ***P72***

8 Gear Shift Controls ***P108***

9 Instrument Cluster ***P32***

Center Console



1 Light Switches ***P67***
Wiper Switches ***P62***

2 Gear Shift Controls ***P108***

3 Cup Holders ***P194***

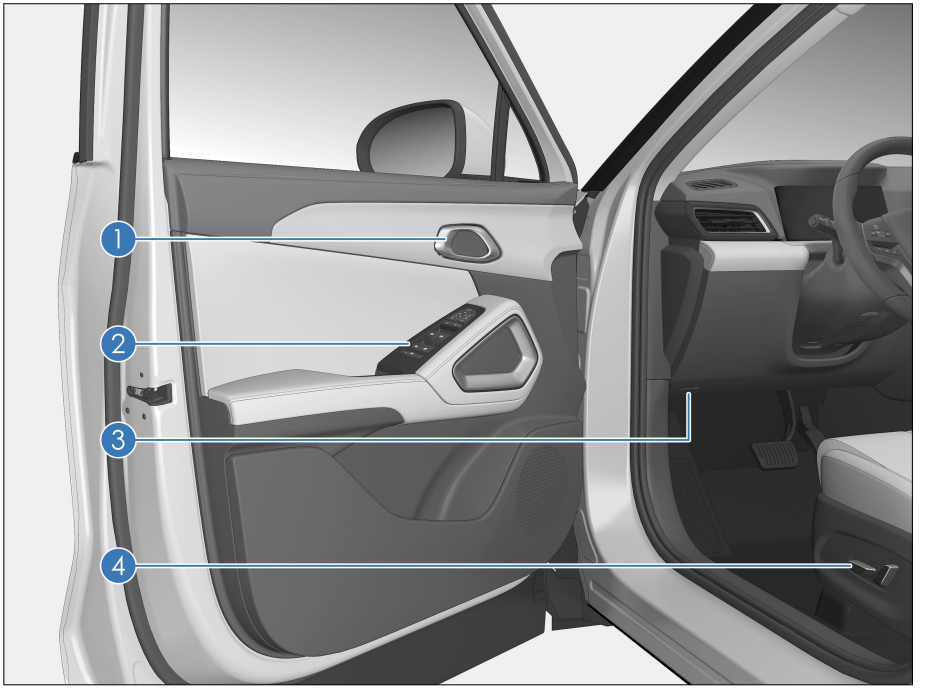
4 Center Console Cubby ***P193***

5 Using Seat Belt ***P12***

6 Wireless Phone Charger* ***P196***

7 Front-row USB Ports ***P195***

Doors



1 Opening with Interior Door Handle ***P49***

2 Power Window Switches ***P69***

Window Lock Button ***P71***

Central Locking ***P71***

Side Mirror Switches ***P66***

3 Opening the Hood ***P210***

4 Adjusting Front Seats with Power ***P57***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 14
Child Restraint Systems..... 21
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 26
Data Collection and Processing..... 26

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

CAUTION

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily for adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose an appropriate child restraint system according to your child's age and size (see ***P21***).
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- BYD has highly emphasized that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
- Children are encouraged to travel on the rear seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow a child to be carried on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)*

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack in order to pull out the seat belt.

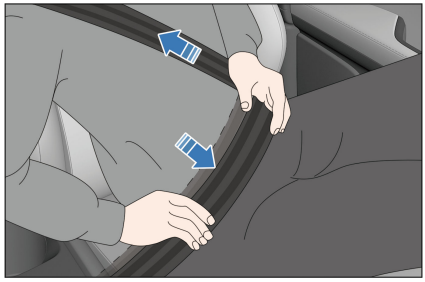
Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

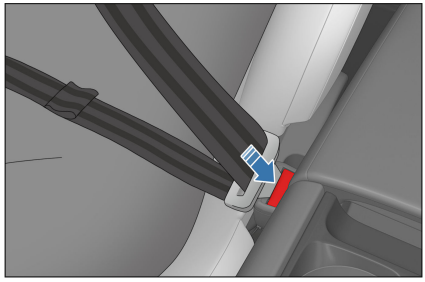
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (see Adjusting Front Seats).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally across the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck.
- Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hips.



3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.

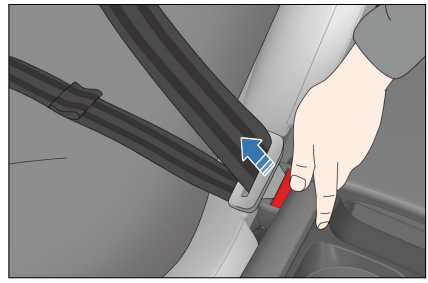


WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

4. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not share a seat belt with another occupant, not even with a child.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door or rear seatback; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts without permission.

WARNING

- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If the pretensioner function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced. Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lap belt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, please ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If the driver or front passenger has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, the alarm go off and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder main indicator
  - This indicator flashes if any alarm is triggered due to unfastened seat belt.
- Display of unfastened seat belt
  - The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt and alarm lights up.
- Seat belt reminder for front passenger
  - If the driver or front passenger has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the main seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator for the corresponding seat light up. When the vehicle is in motion and the driver or any passenger has not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator flashes and an audible alarm is given.
  - When the driver and all the passengers fasten the seat belts, the main indicator and the corresponding seat indicator turn off.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of supplemental restraint system (SRS)

and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy and, along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants to reduce the risk of personal injury or even death.

- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision in which they are designed to deploy. The front airbags include a driver and a front passenger airbag. The side airbags include front seat side airbags, side curtain airbags, and a far-side airbag*.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

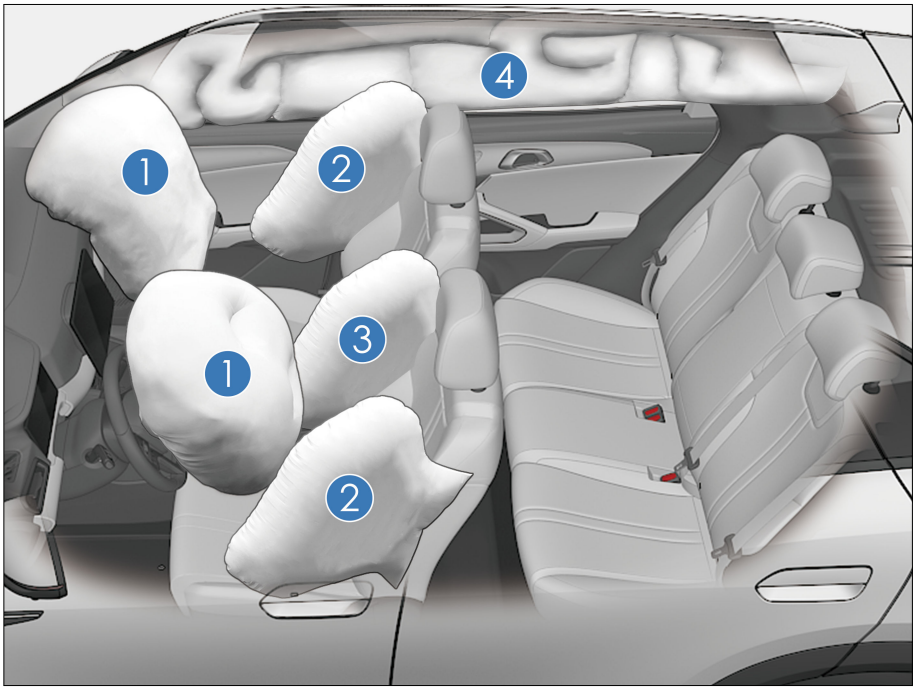
WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.

WARNING

- Do not use seat covers, as they restrict airbag deployment on the corresponding side in an accident.
- Do not place anything between the airbags and the occupants.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a crash, even if the airbag did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible to ensure that the airbag system functions correctly.
- The airbag warning light stays on in the presence of certain system faults. If this light stays on, please head to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for an airbag system inspection.
- If the vehicle is ingressed with water (wet carpet or vehicle submerged in water) or damaged by water, do not start the vehicle and the low-voltage battery needs to be disconnected. Otherwise, the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

Airbag Types



① Driver and front passenger airbags

② Front seat side airbags

③ Far Side Airbag*

④ Side curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.
- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso and the airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- Airbags can inflate rapidly when triggering conditions are satisfied to

further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.

- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- The deployment of airbags may release smoke and dust. Although these substances are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory conditions may experience temporary discomfort. If the discomfort is severe, seek medical attention immediately.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Front Seat Side Airbags

The front seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of front seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.

WARNING

- Do not wet the seatbacks, in case the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment.
- In the event of a side impact, the airbag on the impacted side deploys when the airbag system meets its deployment conditions.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

Far Side Airbag*

The far side airbag is mounted in the inner edge of the driver's seat, marked with "AIRBAG" . When a moderate to severe front or side impact is detected while the ignition is on and the triggering conditions are met, the far side airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

WARNING

- If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimum far side airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Side Curtain Airbags

The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junction of the body side trim and the ceiling and marked with "AIRBAG" on the B-pillar and C-pillar trims. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupant on the impacted side.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- Airbag triggering conditions: In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacle type, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: The Electronic Control Unit (ECU) captures the deceleration curve and other signals of the vehicle during the crash. If they are lower than the threshold values set in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle is seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

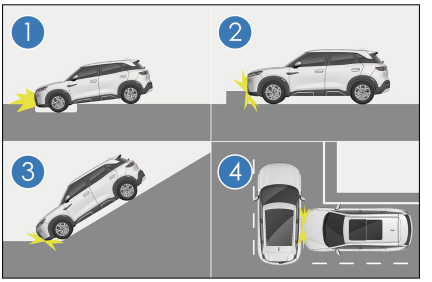
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



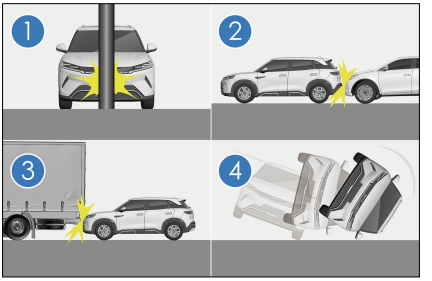
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

③ The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

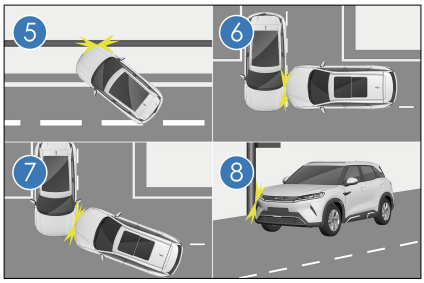


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant

WARNING

is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.

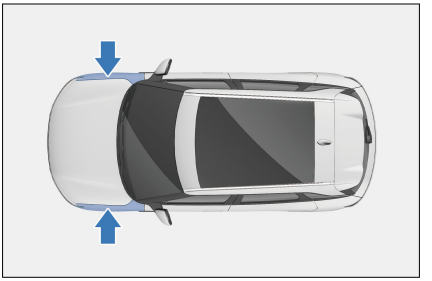
- Do not paste stickers, cover, or decorate the button area or the center cap of the steering wheel, the surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, or the surface at and near the location of side airbags. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated without protection, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion, because doing so may result in serious injuries or even death.
- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windshield, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.

WARNING

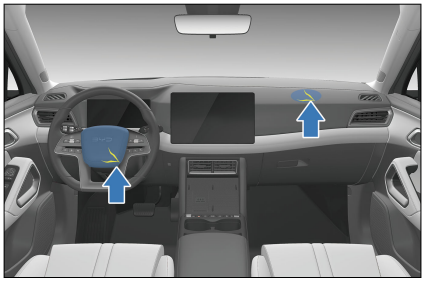
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

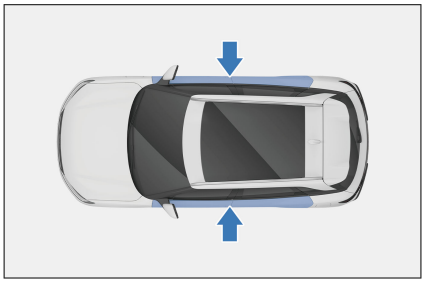
- Any airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- There is a collision with the vehicle doors (highlighted area shown), but the impact is insufficient to deploy the airbags.



- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.
- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.

Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child in an accident. For child safety, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.

WARNING

- Never carry a child on your lap while travelling.
- Children must be secured in a suitable child restraint in a comfortable and safe way when traveling in the vehicle. Make sure that the child restraint is positioned, mounted, and used correctly.
- After the child restraint is dismounted from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.
- Failure to follow the instruction provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual may cause injuries and even death to your child in an accident.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The type and size is suitable for the child.
- The type and size is suitable for the seating position.
- The child restraint must meet the ECE R129 standard.

Front passenger airbag switch

- The switch is located on the passenger's side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open. See ***P72*** for details.

WARNING

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

The vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages and top tether anchorages for child restraint systems. Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer.

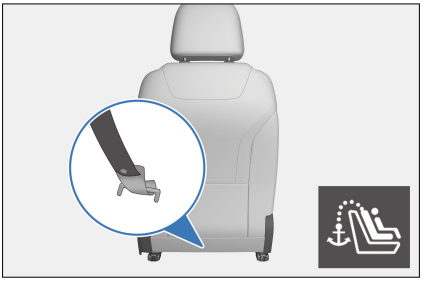
Child Restraint System Anchorages

Front passenger seat

- The front passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages, located below the anchorage markings (see illustration) on the seatback.



- The front passenger seat is equipped with a top tether anchorage on the back.

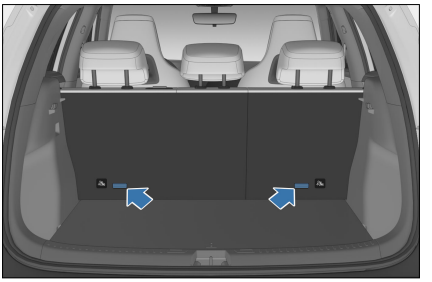


Rear outboard seats

- The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages, located below the anchorage markings (see illustration) on the seatback.



- The outboard rear seats are equipped with top tether anchorages on the back.

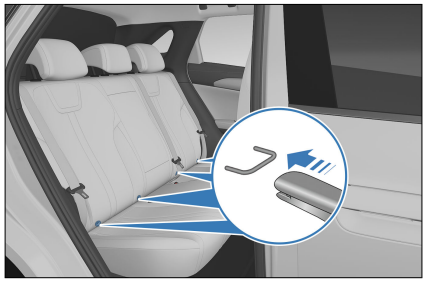


REMINDER

- The ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

1. Check the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage point and install the child restraint on the seat.



WARNING

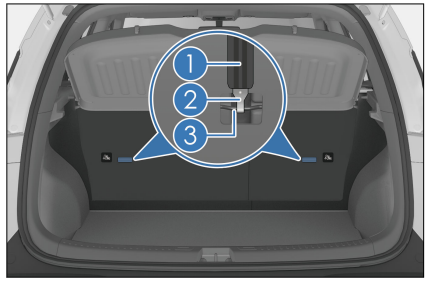
- When using the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring point and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the child restraint is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency parking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harness, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

2. Fasten the snap hook of the top tether strap to the anchor support, and tighten the top tether to ensure the strap is secure.

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support



- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on the front passenger seat*:

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. The airbag must be activated immediately after the rearward-facing child restraint system is dismounted from the front passenger seat.
- If necessary, adjust the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the child and vehicle interior.
- If necessary, adjust the front passenger seat height and seatback angle to ensure a stable installation of the child restraint system.

- When a forward-facing child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is positioned fully rearward away from the active airbag.
- Ensure that the seat belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seats, front seats can be adjusted forward to ensure that the child is not in contact with the front seats. Meanwhile, the front seatback angle can also be adjusted to get more space.
- The head support can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can stably support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is not equipped with the backrest, never remove the head support of the vehicle and be sure to adjust it to the locking position.
- When the child restraint to be installed on a rear outboard seat has top tether straps, remove the cargo cover to access the top tether anchorage. Store the cover safely in your vehicle.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

Seat belt, ISOFIX or i-Size CRS installing options in the vehicle

Type	Seating Position					
		Front passenger seat				
	Driver seat	Front Passenger Airbag Activated [a)]	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a)]	Rear left	Rear middle	Rear right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	×	×	×	Yes	×	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	×	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	×	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral	×	×	×	×	×	×

fixture (L1/L2/No)						
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	×	×	×	R1/R2X/R2/R3	×	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	×	×	×	F2X/F2/F3	×	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	×	×	×	×	×	×

[a)] If necessary, adjust the seat height and seatback angle of the front passenger seat to securely install the child restraint system.

[b)] If necessary, adjust the height of the rear seat head support or remove it to avoid interference with the child restraint system. Do not remove the head support when using a booster cushion without a backrest. The front seats can be adjusted to ensure the child is not in contact with them.

×: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this group.

- Recommended child restraint systems:

Child Stature	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Installing method
40-83 cm	Maxi-Cosi	Pebble 360	Belt
76-105 cm	Britax Römer	Trifix 2 i-Size	ISOFIX and belt
100-150 cm	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size [a)]	ISOFIX and belt
137-150 cm	Osann	Junior Isofix Gurtfix	Belt

[a)]： For better protection, SecureGuard and XP-PAD are recommended.

Recommended child restraint systems for different height groups are shown in the illustration:

① 40-83 cm

② 76-105 cm

③ 100-150 cm

④ 137-150 cm



Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors. The anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after eight seconds.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm* with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, trunk, or hood is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
  - Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door or trunk with a valid smart key/NFC key/App.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
  - Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

WARNING

- Do not repair, replace or modify the components of the anti-theft system; such modifications may cause the system to malfunction or affect the terms of the insurance.
- If a fault occurs, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please refer to the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available in the infotainment system (Configuration 1: → → **Privacy**. Configuration 2: → **System** → **General**.
- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash

(for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:

- Vehicle velocity
- Tire pressure condition
- Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
- Whether the seat belt is fastened

- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors, rain sensor, and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).

- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that

can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).

- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see section "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you are purchasing a second-hand vehicle or receiving a vehicle transferred from a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is to be scrapped or transferred, factory reset the vehicle system to protect your privacy.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap to turn Wi-Fi off.
  - This can also be done by
    - Configuration 1: → → **Network & internet** → **Wi-Fi**.
    - Configuration 2: → **System** → **Connection**.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (e.g. data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).

- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.

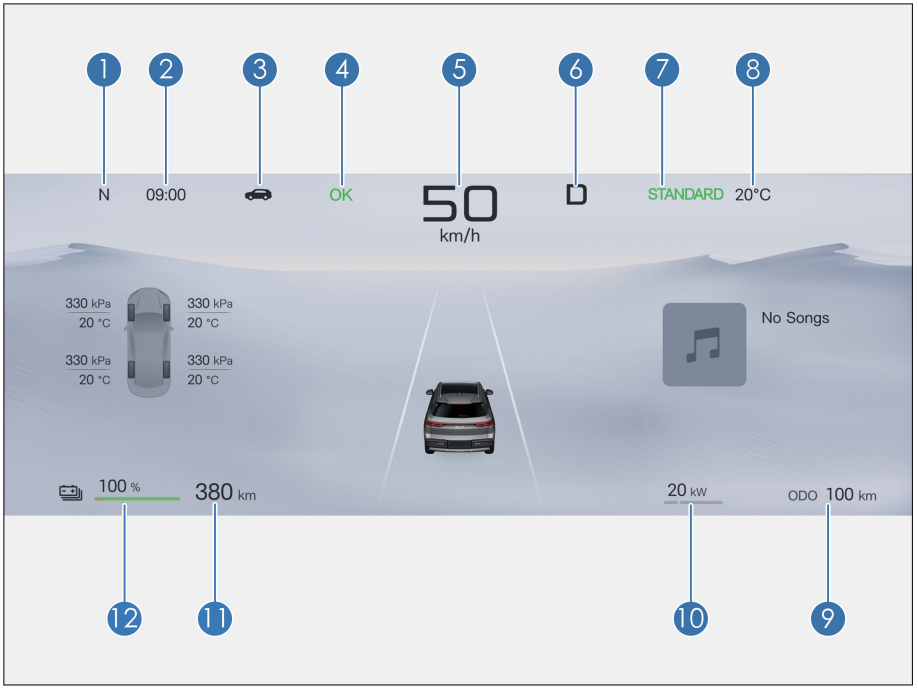
02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....32

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

LCD Instrument Cluster



1	Direction	7	Regenerative braking intensity
2	Time	8	Outside temperature
3	Driving mode	9	Total mileage
4	OK	10	Power meter
5	Speedometer	11	Remaining driving range
6	Gear status	12	State of charge (SOC)

Instrument cluster view in simple mode*



CAUTION

- When the instrument cluster experiences occasional communication delays, it may automatically switch to simple mode for safe driving. In this mode, essential driving information remains displayed and vehicle operation is not affected. The system returns to normal mode automatically once communication recovers. If it does not, try the following steps to switch back to normal mode:
  1. Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.
  2. While safety is ensured, restart the vehicle.

CAUTION

- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator
	Discharge indicator		AVH indicator

	Low beam indicator		OK indicator
	Hill descent control indicator		Regular cruise control main indicator*
	ICC indicator*		ACC status indicator*
	BSD indicator*		Lane keeping indicator*
	AEB indicator		IHBC indicator*
	High beam indicator		Trailer mode indicator*
	Main alarm indicator		Driving power limit warning light
	Tire pressure fault warning light		ABS fault warning light
	ESC system fault warning light		ESC system deactivation warning light
	Smart key warning light		Rear fog light indicator
	Headlight fault warning light		Snow mode indicator
	AVAS OFF indicator		AEB indicator*
	High-voltage battery low SOC warning light*		Low-voltage power system fault warning light
	TSR indicator		EPB indicator

	Parking brake system fault warning light		Seat belt reminder indicator
	Powertrain fault warning light		Charging connection indicator
	High-voltage battery overheating warning light		High-voltage battery fault warning light
	Airbag fault warning light		Coolant overheating warning light
	Steering system fault warning light		Snow mode indicator
	Normal mode indicator		Sport mode indicator
	Economic mode indicator		

Warning Lights/Indicators Description

 Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when you press the START/STOP button, this warning light comes on for a few seconds, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If you press the START/STOP button while an electronic smart key matching the model is in the vehicle, this warning light does not light up. The vehicle can now be powered on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.



Antilock Braking System (ABS) fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking brake system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas the ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking brake system fault warning light off), since the ABS system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized

dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

- This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
- This warning light turns on during driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the parking brake system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

- If both ABS indicator and the braking system indicator come on and the electronic parking brake (EPB) is fully released, the braking force distribution system of front and rear wheels has also failed.



Tire pressure fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at the location of the vehicle may be disturbed or the tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light flashes rapidly, and one or more values turn red on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is leaking rapidly.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tire temperature is too high.

In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



ESC fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If electronic stability control (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking brake system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking brake system fault

warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.

- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed) after the vehicle is powered on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light remains on while the warning lights for the ABS and the braking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.



ESC OFF warning light

- When the ESC OFF switch is pressed, this warning light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system resumes its normal operation.

REMINDER

- Once the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and drive at a low speed when making a sharp turn or avoiding obstacles which appear suddenly, because braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of ESC system.



Driving power limit warning light

When the level of the high-voltage battery is low and the power of the vehicle is limited, this warning light will light up, and it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in time.



Headlight fault warning light

- When the warning light is yellow, it indicates the headlight is faulty, and it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.



Main alarm indicator

- If this indicator goes on, check the fault prompt or warning on the instrument cluster.



Seat belt reminder indicator

- When the ignition is switched on, if any belt on the front row is not fastened, the seat belt reminder lights up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.



Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition switched on, this warning light turns on and then goes off in a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.



Parking brake system fault warning light

When the brake fluid level is low and the braking system is faulty, this warning light lights up. If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.

- This warning light is solid on although after starting the vehicle, the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).
- Fault warning lights for parking brake and ABS come on simultaneously.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.



Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the activation of temperature protection will result in heavy steering or damage the steering system.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.

- To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency or power off the vehicle. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- This light is used to warn about the operating state of the DC module and the low-voltage battery module when the vehicle is not being charged or discharging.
- In charging state, this warning light indicates failure of the charging system.
- If this warning light turns on while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates that there is a problem with the DC system or the low-voltage power system. In this case, turn off the A/C and fans, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
- This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
- This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.



High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.



High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up

again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

- If any of the following cases occurs, it means that there are faults in the components monitored by the warning light system. In such case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.

 FCW warning light (red)

- When this indicator is on or flashes, pay attention to the distance from the vehicle ahead, and do not get too close to it to prevent potential collision.

 Coolant overheating indicator

- If this indicator is solid on, it indicates that the coolant temperature is too high. Park the vehicle in a safe area until this indicator goes out.

 TSR indicator

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognized the speed limit value on current road section.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended.

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. Check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Vehicle network failure, pull over safely and contact the service store	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	EV function limited	The EV function is limited. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.
	Check the headlight	The headlight is faulty. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Check the FCW system*	The FCW system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	AEB limited*	The automatic emergency braking (AEB) system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Check the BSD system*	The blind spot detection system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	BSD limited*	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Check the gear system	The shifter controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Check the ICC or LDA system*	The intelligent cruise control (ICC) or lane departure assist (LDA) is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	ICC or LDA limited*	The ICC or LDA function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATIONS

Doors and Keys.....44
Seats.....56
Steering Wheel.....59
Wipers..... 62
Rearview Mirrors.....65
Switches.....67

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including electronic smart key, mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), bluetooth digital key* and NFC key*.

Electronic Smart Key

Press the front door microswitch, while carrying the smart key, to unlock or lock all doors, or press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, unlock the trunk, or start the vehicle remotely.

① Indicator

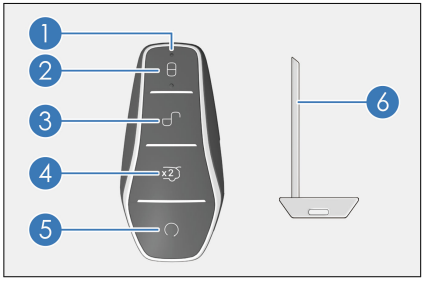
② Lock button

③ Unlock button

④ Trunk release button

⑤ Start/Stop button

⑥ Mechanical Key



WARNING

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.

WARNING

- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.
- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the

CAUTION

normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:

- Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change.

- If the smart key is lost or fails, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
- The use of the smart key must not cause harmful interference to legal radio communication services. Once interference is found, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must endure the interference of various radio services or the radiation interference of industrial, scientific, and medical equipment.

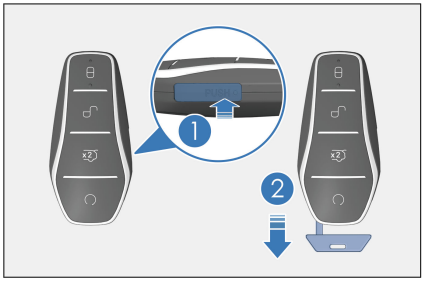
CAUTION

- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

Mechanical Key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. Insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

- Press the "PUSH" button ① on the smart key, and take out the mechanical key in the direction indicated by ②.



- To put the mechanical key back, press the PUSH button and then insert the mechanical key.

Bluetooth Digital Key*

Mobile Phone Bluetooth Digital Key*

The BYD Bluetooth digital key allows you to control the vehicle via a short-range Bluetooth connection between the smartphone and the vehicle, including functions such as unlocking and locking the car doors.

- You can download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- If you are using a vehicle equipped with the Bluetooth digital key function, follow these steps to set up the key near the vehicle:

  1. Open the BYD app.
  2. Switch on the Bluetooth of your phone.
  3. Select the corresponding vehicle.
  4. Tap the "Bluetooth Key Setup" button on the vehicle page to activate the Bluetooth key.

- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The Bluetooth key operates through a Bluetooth connection and sends control commands to the vehicle, without relying on mobile network status.
- When you unbind the vehicle or cancel the cloud service, your Bluetooth key will be deleted.

CAUTION

- Before activating the Bluetooth key, ensure that the vehicle network signal is good. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors may lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the Bluetooth key connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- The Bluetooth digital key requires your smartphone's Bluetooth and location services to be turned on. If you encounter any issues, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The operating system versions supported by the mobile Bluetooth car key are iOS 16 and above, and Android 6.0 and above.

NFC Key Card*

- The vehicle supports NFC key card* and NFC digital key* (including smartphones and wearable devices. See ***P47*** for details).
- Place the NFC key at the mark on the left side mirror to unlock/lock all the doors.

CAUTION

- Some smartphone and wearable device models do not support NFC digital keys.
- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage to the card:
  - Do not place the NFC card in the charging area when the wireless charger is on.
  - Do not attach any object (such as a metal seal or metal phone case) that may cut off electromagnetic waves, when using the NFC card.
  - Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not bend the card with force.
  - Do not place the card with other hard objects.
- NFC key cards use near-field communication technology, requiring a detection distance of less than 2 cm. Hold your NFC card close to the side mirror for 1-2 seconds.
- The NFC smart card is a key configured for the vehicle based on the near field communication method. In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle it with care. If it is lost, going to BYD authorized dealer or service provider for blocking of the lost card and re-configuration is recommended.

NFC Digital Key*

- NFC digital key is a function provided by BYD for users. You can register mobile phones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock and start the vehicle.
- Before activating the NFC digital key, observe the following conditions:
  - The vehicle has been equipped with BYD Cloud Service.
  - The vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Some mobile phones and wearable devices support BYD NFC digital keys.

Activating the NFC digital key of mobile phone

Before activating, start the vehicle and shift into "P" with a valid smart key. You can activate the NFC digital key in any of the two ways:

- Via BYD App:
  - Download BYD App in App Store, then register and log in to the app. Tap "Digital Key" and follow the instructions to activate it.
- Via the infotainment touchscreen:
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Locks** → **Locks** → **Digital Key** and follow the instructions to activate the key.

Activating the NFC digital key of wearable device

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for other supported wearable devices), and there are two ways for activating:

- Synchronize data to Apple Watch after the successful activation on iPhone:
  - Wear an unlocked Apple Watch and activate the iPhone digital key. After activation, iPhone synchronously prompts to add a digital key on the nearby bound Apple Watch. Activate it according to the instructions.
- Via Watch App:
  - This method is applicable when the iPhone digital key is activated but not synchronized to the Apple Watch. Open the Watch on the iPhone, select "Wallet", find the corresponding key and tap "Add" to activate the key according to the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

When using the NFC digital key, enable the NFC function of the mobile phone or wearable device. Usage:

- Carry a mobile phone or wearable device with a valid NFC digital key, put its NFC antenna area close to NFC sensor area on the driver's side mirror, and unlock or lock the vehicle. Consult the manufacturers for details of the NFC antenna area.
- Place the mobile phone or wearable device on the in-vehicle NFC sensor area to obtain the vehicle start permission.

CAUTION

- With permission, start the vehicle as soon as possible. If the vehicle is not started in time, place the mobile phone or wearable device on the in-vehicle NFC sensor area again to obtain the permission.

Removing the NFC digital key

There are three ways:

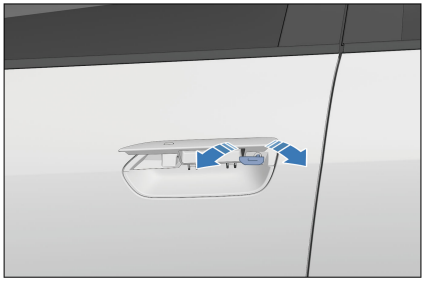
- Via BYD App:
  - Open BYD App, enter the digital key management page, tap the key to be removed, and enter the operation password to remove it.
- Via the infotainment touchscreen:
  - With a valid smart key inside the vehicle, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Locks** → **Digital Key**. Tap the key to be removed and operate as prompted.
- Via Wallet:
  - Open the Wallet on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it according to the instructions.

Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

Insert the key into the lock hole, turn and remove the key, return the door handle to the initial position and pull the handle to open the door.

- Unlock the driver's door: Turn the key clockwise.
- Lock the driver's door: Turn the key counterclockwise.

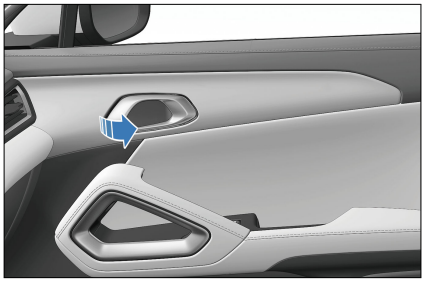


CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

CAUTION

- Using mechanical connections, the interior door handles remain can open the doors even when the vehicle is powered off.
- As this vehicle is equipped with a mechanical child protection lock, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior door handle when the child protection lock is disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- When you enter the active area while carrying a registered smart key, press the button on the smart key slowly and firmly to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When all the doors, the trunk, and the hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all the doors. Check whether all doors are securely locked.
  - If the ignition is switched off, the side mirrors fold in* (when side mirror auto fold* is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once.



- If the ignition is switched on, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.
- If any door, the hood or the trunk is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash and the alarm sounds once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button to unlock all the doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights may stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all the doors will lock automatically.
- When the vehicle is equipped with four-door anti-pinch function, pressing and holding the lock or unlock button of the smart key will raise or lower windows, and pressing it briefly will trigger the lock/unlock function.

Anti-forget key function

- If the key is in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle will unlock automatically and the turn signals will flash twice.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a long beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key*

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.
- To enable or disable key window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows** (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).

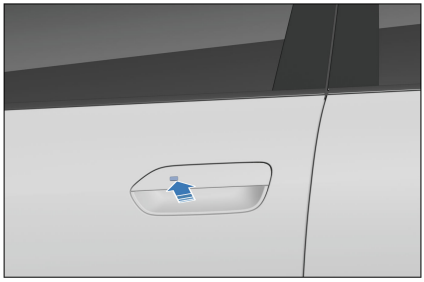
WARNING

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- When the ignition is switched off and all doors are closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors will be locked and turn signals flash once.
- If a door, the hood or the trunk is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.



Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key close to the activated area. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking. Otherwise, all the doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The smart key is left in the vehicle.
- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- With the ignition off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows (By default, lifting the window function is activated and lowering the window function is disabled).
- To enable or disable microswitch window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**.

Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key Card*

Locking doors

- When doors are closed but unlocked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. All doors can then be locked at the same time. The turn signals flash once when the vehicle is powered off.



Unlocking doors

- When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. Then all doors can be unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- Putting the NFC key close to the NFC mark on the side mirror on the driver's side does not work if:
  - This is performed while the door is opened or closed.
- To use the NFC digital key* on the phone, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror.

⚠ CAUTION

- The keyless start permission lasts for up to four minutes.

CAUTION

- The NFC digital key may not work if phones are off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

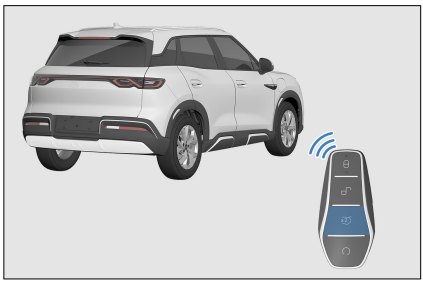
REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- After unlocking by NFC key, the user can start the vehicle without the key in a stipulated period, while this will be disabled after legal locking.

Unlocking the Trunk

Unlocking the trunk with smart key

- Double-press the trunk release button on the smart key. The turn signals then flash twice.



Unlocking the Trunk with Microswitch

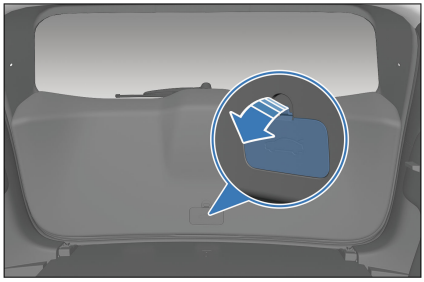
- With the ignition off and the anti-theft alarm system armed, approach and press the rear microswitch while carrying a valid key to unlock the trunk.
- When the anti-theft alarm system is disarmed, press the rear microswitch to open the trunk.

WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure fingers or other objects are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
  - Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the trunk.
  - Make sure the trunk is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
  - Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the trunk.
  - The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the trunk on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the trunk, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.

Emergency Trunk Releasing from the Inside

There is an emergency unlocking cover just above the trunk lock. Open the cover and pull the emergency unlocking rope or lever to open the trunk in an emergency.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

See ***P71*** in "Driver's Door Switches" in this chapter.

Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. Then, all doors are unlocked automatically.

Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- When the vehicle is not in anti-theft mode, the backlight of the central locking button turns on if the vehicle is locked and turns off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

REMINDER

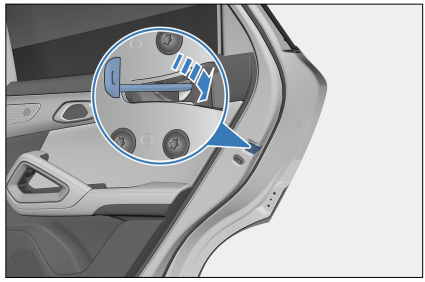
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

Locking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Open all doors other than the driver's door and move down the slider with the mechanical key as shown. You can then lock the doors by closing the them.



3. After locking the three doors, open the driver's door.
4. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out (see Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key in this Chapter).

Unlocking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.

2. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.
3. Pull the interior handle twice to unlock the three other doors.

REMINDER

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors (see ***P49***).

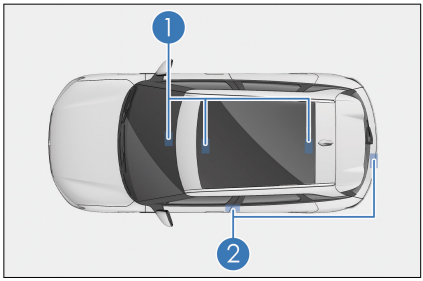
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle (see ***P106***).

Antenna positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna



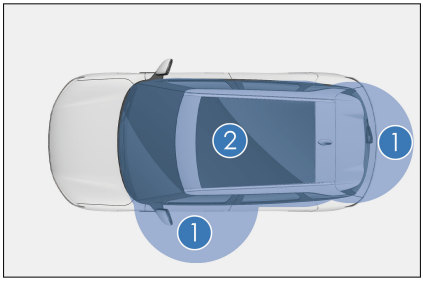
Active area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about one meter from the front door handle and the exterior trunk switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.

If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.



REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.

REMINDER

- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Pressing the Start/Stop button may not enable the start function due to:
  - Smart key failure. If the smart key warning light comes on and a message ("Low key battery, please replace the battery soon") is displayed on the instrument cluster, the battery of the key may be exhausted.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The smart key communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within two meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
  - TVs
  - PCs
  - On-board charger
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent desk lamps

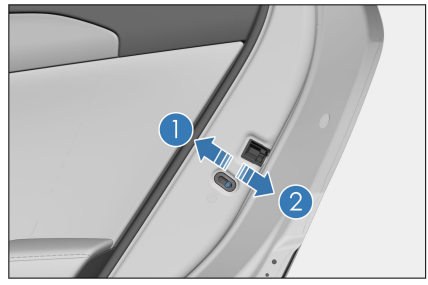
Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

① Locking

② Unlocking

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle while the latch is locked. Use the exterior door handle to open this door.



WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and the child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in the event of an accident, and prevent the doors from being opened accidentally.

Seats

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Do not fold or unfold the rear seats when the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the trunk, or on the cargo

WARNING

is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.

- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets. Avoid squeezing or trapping children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.
- Maintain a safe distance from surrounding occupants' foot areas when adjusting the seat to avoid compression or entrapment.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback is locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, occupants in the vehicle could hit the strap in an accident, causing injuries to the neck or other parts; or they may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.

WARNING

- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

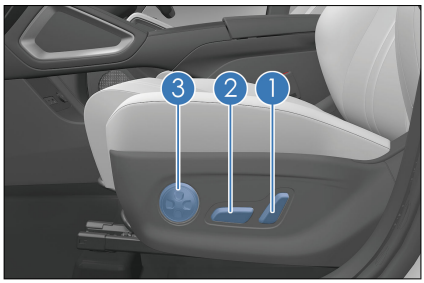
CAUTION

- Adjust the seat position before fastening seat belts.

Adjusting Front Seats

Adjusting Front Seat with Power*

Power front seat adjustments allow you to adjust seatback recline, seat position, cushion height, cushion angle*, and lumbar support*. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.



① seatback recline adjustment

- Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.

② seat position adjustment

- Move the switch forward or rearward to change the seat fore and aft position.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to adjust cushion height.

③ Lumbar support adjustment*

- The seatback profile can be adjusted to fit the curvature of the occupant's lumbar spine.
  - Press the front or rear portion of the switch to increase or decrease the curvature.
  - Press the upper or lower portion of the switch to extend the curvature up or down.

REMINDER

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in the set position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.
- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

Heating System*

- To access the setting interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen→ .
- Enable or disable this function in the infotainment touchscreen → → **Drive**/ **Vehicle** → **Seats**.
- Find the seat heating setting* button from the drop-down menu on the infotainment system homepage.

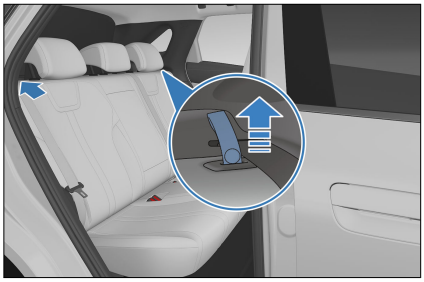
Heating adjustment

- Seat heating: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the seat heating icon to control the heating level.

- Tap to select the operation mode among level 1, level 2, and OFF.
- Switch to OFF to disable seat heating.

Folding Rear Seats

- Flipping and lowering the seatback
  - Pull the cord to straighten the seatback.
  - Push the seatback forward/backward to fold it. You can fold the seatback forward until the back touches the cushion, or you can fold it backward until reaching the locking position (with a locking click).



REMINDER

- Please fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up seat backs to prevent damages to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.
- When unfolding a rear seat, do not push the seatback hard; otherwise, the seatback will be pre-stressed and impossible to unlock.
- When unfolding a seatback, check that the buckle position is proper to expose the reserved opening on the seat.

REMINDER

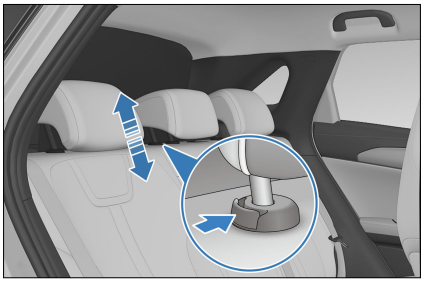
- Do not turn over the seat when the seat belt latch is inserted into the buckle.

Head Supports

- Lifting a head support

  Lift the head support to a proper position, and release it after hearing a locking sound.
- Lowering a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button after hearing a locking sound.



- Removing a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support, and release the button.
- Installing a head support

  Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly lift the head support and release the button after hearing a locking sound.

REMINDER

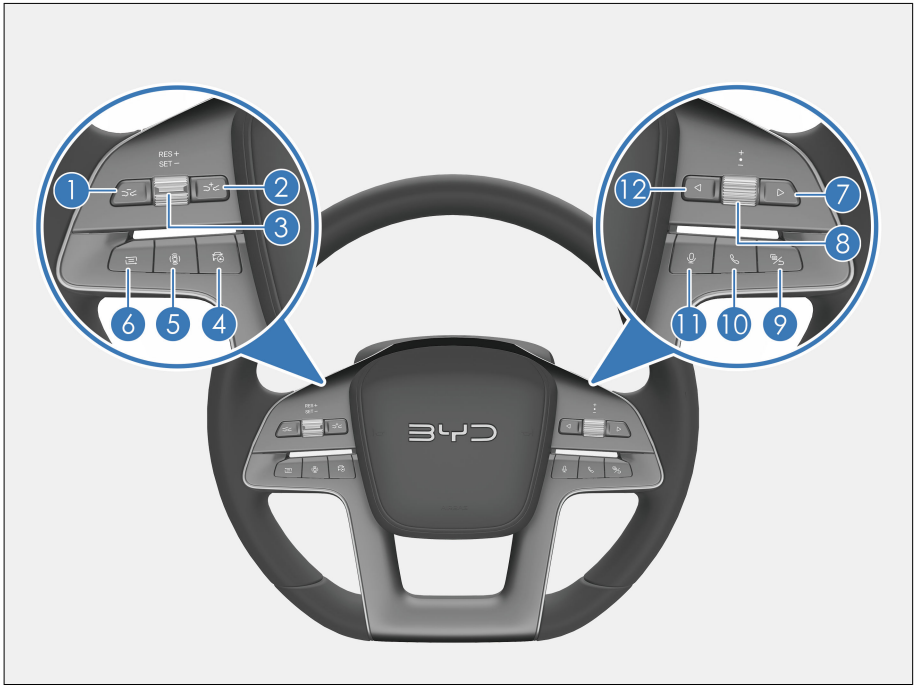
- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After the adjustment, press down the head support to make sure that it is locked.

REMINDER

- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1 Distance -

7 Right

2 Distance +

3 Rocker switch

4 ACC

5 AVM*

6 Driving information

8 Scroll button

9 Instrument cluster/Back

10 Call

11 Speech recognition

12 Left

Left-hand buttons

Rocker switch

- Reset/+: Restores the speed stored before exiting from the cruise system last time.
- Setup -: Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

Distance +

- Increases the time-based following distance from the vehicle ahead by one level each time when it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

Distance -

- Decreases the time-based following distance from the vehicle ahead by one level each time when it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

ACC

- Press this button to enable or disable ACC.

AVM*

- Press this button to enable or disable the around view monitor (AVM) system.

Driving information

- Press this button to switch the driving information interface. Press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Adjusting infotainment system volume when the instrument cluster is not in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
  - Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
  - Press down the button to mute.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to select the upper level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Roll the button downward to select the lower level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Press down the button to go to the next-level menu or confirm the current setting.

CAUTION

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press ◁ to select previous radio station.
  - Press ▷ to select next radio station.
- In USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press ◁ to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press ▷ to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press ▷ to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
- In the menu mode:
  - Press ◁ to switch to the previous menu and its submenus on the left.
  - Press ▷ to switch to the next menu and its submenus on the right.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press Instrument cluster/Back to show the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- When on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to end the call.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call (the audio system is muted at the same time).
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the Dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button to activate speech recognition on the infotainment touchscreen, with which you can record voice commands.
- Press a second time to exit speech recognition.

Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Heating*

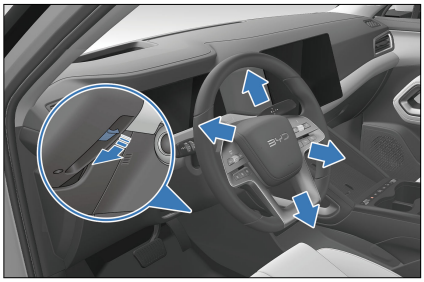
Enable steering wheel heating by any of the following methods:

1. Enable or disable this function in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive**/ **Vehicle** → **Seats**.
2. Go to the drop-down shortcut menu, and tap the steering wheel heating icon to turn on or off the heating.
3. Voice control: activates the voice control to enable or disable steering wheel heating.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle, move the steering wheel to the desired angle, or adjust it to the desired axial position, and restore the handle to the locked position.



WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.

WARNING

- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The level of steering assistance can be adjusted to individual preferences.
- To set the steering mode, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive**/**Vehicle** → **Driving Control** → **Steering Assist Mode**, and select Comfort or Sport.

REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed.

Wipers

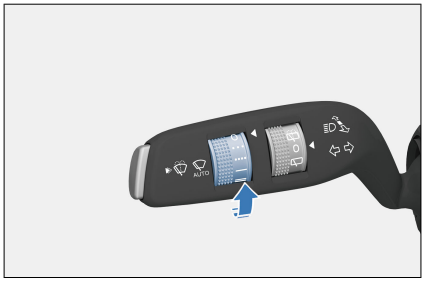
Wiper Switch

Windshield Wipers and Washer

Front wipers

- The lever is used to control the front windshield wipers and washer among the following five modes:
  - 0 : OFF
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 1
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 2
  - : Continuous, slow
  - : Continuous, fast

- Toggle down or up the rocker switch on the rear side of the lever to select a mode.



- You can enable the auto wiper function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**. Once enabled, the wipers will swipe once and then switch to the auto mode, adjusting based on rain intensity.
- In auto mode, toggle down or up the rocker switch on the rear side of the lever to select a mode.

WARNING

- If the ignition is on, and the wipers are set to auto mode, touching or wiping the glass on the sensor area may activate the wipers and cause an accident.

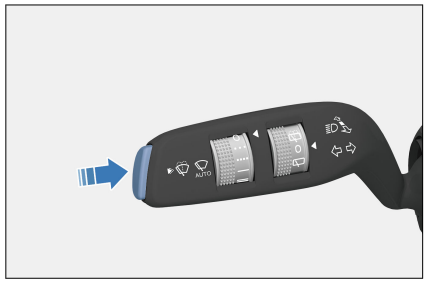
CAUTION

- Turn off the auto wipers vehicle washes, in dry weather, or on rain-free days, to prevent inadvertent wiper operation.
- When the wiper stops midway for snow accumulation and other reasons, please turn it off, park the vehicle in a safe place, and remove the snow and other debris, so that the wiper can work properly.

CAUTION

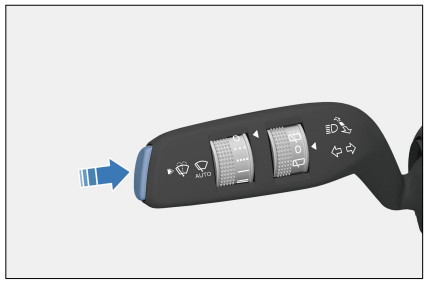
- The sensor may occasionally fail to properly detect snowflakes, as they have various shapes, which could lead to wiper malfunction. After the snow melts, the wipers may automatically activate.

- To operate the wipers in point-wiping mode, press the button at the end of the control lever to the first position. The wipers wipe at a low speed until the button is released.



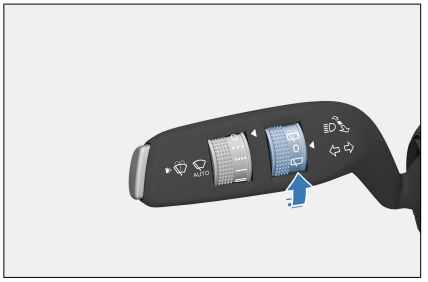
Front windshield washer

- To clean the front windshield, press the button at the end of the control lever to the second position. The washer spray continuously, and the wipers will start working afterward.
- If the control lever is released, or if the operation lasts longer than 10 seconds, the washer stops spraying, and the wipers will complete 1 to 2 wiping cycles before stopping.



Rear wiper

- Set the rear wiper switch to to enable the intermittent rear wiper function.
- Set the rear wiper switch to or open the trunk to stop the rear wiper.
- Set the rear wiper switch to and hold it to activate the rear wiper and washer simultaneously.



- Set the rear wiper switch to and release it. The wiper will operate once or twice after washing fluid has been sprayed.

CAUTION

- Check and clean the wiper blades at regular intervals.
- Do not start the wipers while rain is starting, as the windshield cannot be cleaned and rainwater mixed with sand and dust may instantly blur your view, affecting driving safety.
- When the wiper stops midway for snow accumulation and other reasons, please turn it off, park the vehicle in a safe place, and remove the snow and other debris, so that the wiper can work properly.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water, or another type

CAUTION

of detergent, may damage the washer motor.

- Do not operate the washer for over 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty, as those may cause motor overheating or damage.

Wipers

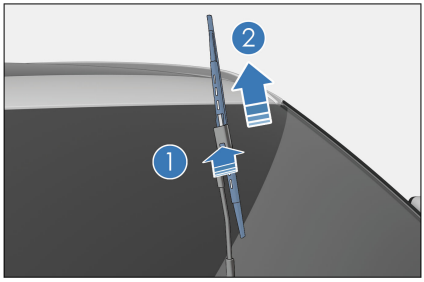
Inspect wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windshield will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.

Replacing Wiper Blades

When the vehicle is powered on, enable or disable the front wiper check on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Drive**/**Service** → **Overhaul**. When the corresponding wiper check function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

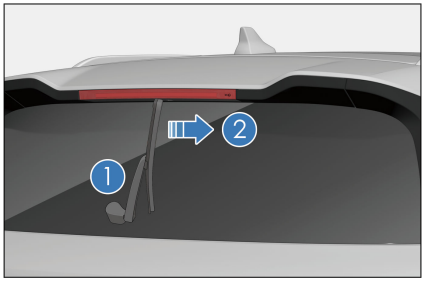
Replacing front wipers

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button ①.
3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction ②.
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



Replacing the rear wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm.
2. Hold the wiper in position ①, and pull the blade out along the indicated direction ②.
3. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



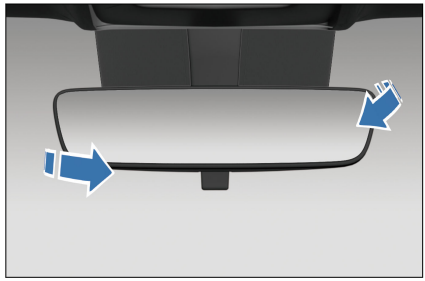
CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Lower the wipers slowly and avoid direct impact onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.
- When replacing the wiper blade, after raising the wiper arm, hold it steady and gently lower it after replacing the wiper blade. Otherwise, before the wiper blade is installed, any external force could make the wiper arm snap back on the glass and risk breaking it.

Rearview Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



WARNING

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror to avoid the mirror falling off.
- Adjusting the rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention, causing personal injury or death from accidents.

Automatic Anti-glare Rearview Mirror*

The automatic anti-glare rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare

function, which automatically adjusts the lens color of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.



Side Mirrors

Adjusting Side Mirrors

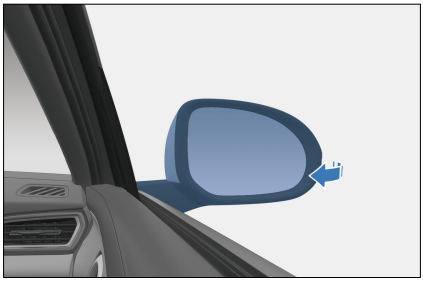
Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle.

- Selection switches: selects the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Left side mirror button
  - : Right side mirror button
- Side mirror adjustment buttons : Press this button to adjust the side mirror lens to an appropriate position.



Folding Side Mirrors

- **Folding side mirrors manually***
  - Push the outer edge of a side mirror to rotate it around the folding axis to the locked position.



- **Folding side mirrors with power***
  - Fold switch : folds or unfolds both side mirrors.
  - Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when the system is disarmed.
  - To enable or disable side mirror auto fold, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Drive/Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**.

WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

REMINDER

- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.

Side Mirror Defrosters*

Tap this button on the A/C operation interface to activate the function, and the

heating panel in side mirrors will quickly clear the side mirrors.

REMINDER

- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

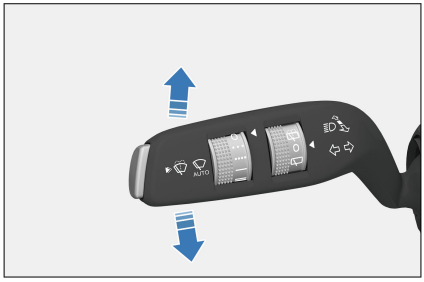
Switches

Light Switches

- Auto lights, position lights, low beam lights, rear fog lights, and daytime running lights can be controlled on the infotainment system.
- To turn on or off any of these lights or turn off all of them, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior**.

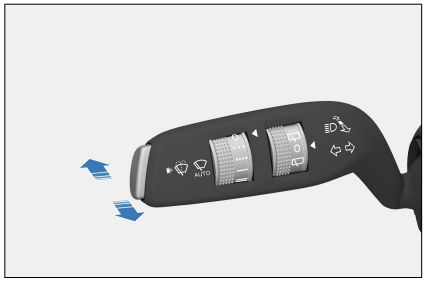
Turn signals

- Push up the lever to turn on the right turn signal and push down the lever to turn on the left turn signal.



High beam

- When the auto light or low beam function is activated in the infotainment system, push the lever to turn on or off the high beams.
- Push the lever forward (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beams and then they are solid on.
- Pull the lever back (close to the steering wheel) and the high beam flashes. Release the lever for the light switch to automatically reset and the high beams turn off.



REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located on the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Auto light off

- Conditions to activate the auto light off function: to activate this function, set the switch to "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam" and switch off the vehicle power.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.

- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off again after 10 seconds. But if any door is open, it turns off the lights in 10 minutes.

Headlights after exit and headlights before enter

- Headlights after exit:
  - Set the time for "Headlights after Exit" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the lights switch set to "AUTO", "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam", when you power off the vehicle, lock four doors, and are leaving the vehicle, the corresponding lights will continue to light up for 10 seconds (or the set time period).
- Headlights before enter:
  - Set the time for "Headlights before Enter" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the light switch set to "Auto", "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam", when you unlock the vehicle and approach it, the corresponding lights will light up for 10 seconds (or the set time period).

Headlight Height

- To adjust headlight height, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Lights** → **Exterior Light**.

Adaptive Front Light (AFL)*

- Adaptive front light (AFL) is a driver assistance feature that helps the driver use the high beam appropriately in dark environments. The system automatically switches from low beam to high beam to maximize visibility in low-light conditions. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzling other drivers. It also switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- AFL indicators:

AFL standby	AFL activated	AFL fault
		

High beam on/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in the AUTO position.

- The vehicle speed is between 35 km/h and 140km/h.
- The area ahead is dark.

- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime, the system suppresses the high beam when ambient lighting is sufficient.
  - At night, the system suppresses the high beam when other road users are detected within a certain range ahead.
  - At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high beam is activated again if conditions are met.

WARNING

AFL may be falsely triggered or fail to operate due to various environmental factors and conditions. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:

- The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- There are road users with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and cyclists), railways or waterways nearby, or animals on the road.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.
- The front windshield that is fogged, dirty, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- AFL serves as an auxiliary light control and cannot replace the driver's judgment. You must observe road regulations and switch between high and low beams based on changing road conditions.
- If the vehicle has been involved in a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration to avoid affecting system performance.

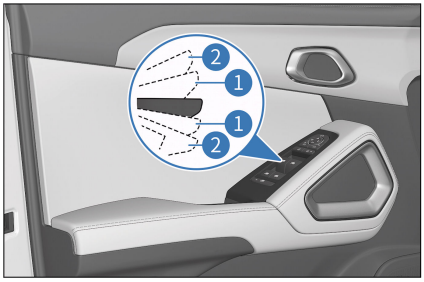
REMINDER

- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect AFL functionality.
- Activating the high beam manually suppresses the AFL feature.

Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- When the ignition is on, the window switches can be used to roll up or down windows.
  - Press the window switch to roll the window down.
  - Pull up the window switch to roll the window up.



Manual operation

- Press or pull a window switch to position ① and hold to lower or raise the associated window. Release the switch to stop the window where you want it.

Auto lifting

- Press or pull a window switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window. During the process, operate the switch in any direction to stop the window midway.

Anti-pinch function*

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down automatically.

Initialization of anti-pinch function

- Pull the switch to close the window, then release immediately. Repeat the first step and hold the switch for at least 400 ms.

WARNING

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- Please follow the precautions below to prevent serious injury or death from window closing:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
  - Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- If the low-voltage battery is disconnected while a window is being rolled up or down, the automatic rolling-up and anti-pinch functions both cease to work.
- Contacting a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

Delay function*

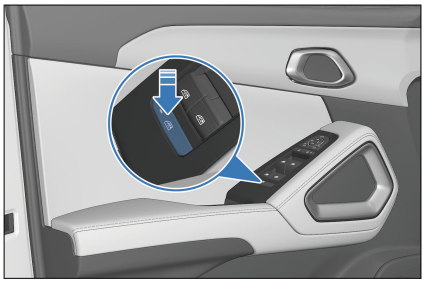
- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a roll-up/down delay period of 10 minutes. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is canceled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Before closing a power window, ensure occupants' hands are not placed upon the window glass; pinching of hands or fingers can result in serious injuries.

Window Lock Button*

- Pressing this button deactivates the window switches on the rear row. The window switches on the sides of the driver and the front passenger remain operational.
- Press the switch a second time. The indicator goes out, and the window switches on the rear row work normally.



Central Locking

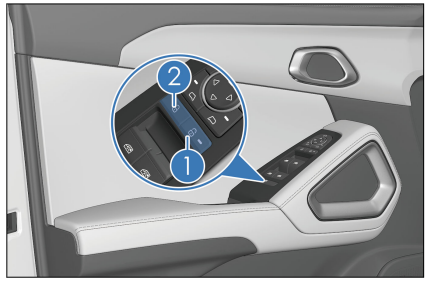
The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches. Both switches can lock or unlock all doors.

① **Locking**

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.

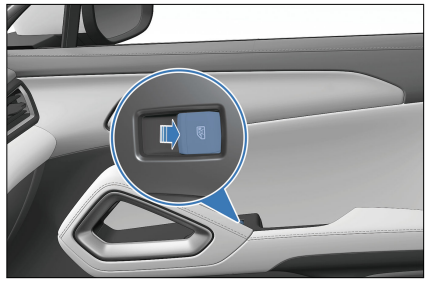
② **Unlocking**

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.



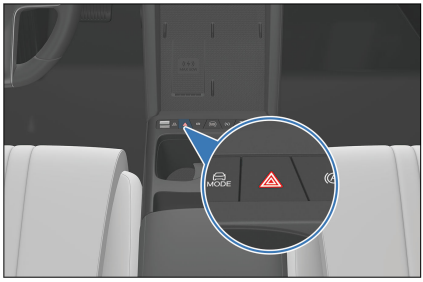
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side

When the ignition is on, use the front passenger and rear door window switches to operate the respective windows.



Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the ⚠ button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ button is pressed again.



CAUTION

- The hazard warning lights are used to alert drivers and pedestrians of possible risks of dangerous accidents.

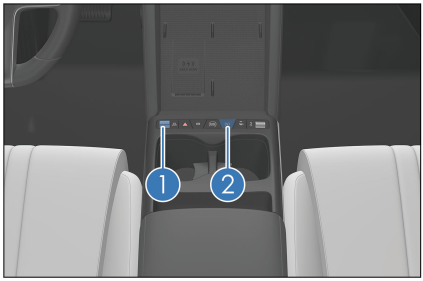
Mode Switches

① Driving mode adjustment lever

- Available driving modes include normal, eco, sport, and snow mode. Using the stick to choose among different modes tailored to your specific needs.

② Regenerative braking mode button

- Press the button to enable the high regenerative braking mode.
- Press again to enable the standard regenerative braking mode.



CAUTION

- Shutting down the ESC system may help if the motor performance is degraded in soft snow conditions by the activation of dynamic stability control. The ESC system must be restarted after conditions are back to normal.

Front Passenger Airbag Switch

- The front passenger airbag can be activated or deactivated with a front passenger airbag switch.
- The switch is located on the passenger's side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open.



- The front passenger airbag indicator is located on the ceiling.
- Check that the switch is in the required position.
- Enable or disable the front passenger airbag according to the use of the front passenger seat:
  - When the switch is ON, the front passenger airbag is activated. The front passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  come on, and "OFF"

and  are off. The front passenger airbag deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.

- When the switch is OFF, the front passenger airbag is deactivated. The passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  are off, and "OFF" and  come on. The front passenger airbag do not deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.

WARNING

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat with an activated passenger airbag. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injuries or death.
- When the front passenger seat is occupied with an adult, the passenger airbag switch must be turned to "ON" to always keep the front passenger airbag active.
- If the front passenger airbag remains active when the front passenger airbag switch is off, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the airbag system, operate the front passenger airbag switch when the vehicle is on "OFF".
- It is the driver's responsibility to confirm that the front passenger airbag switch is in the correct position for the person sitting in the front passenger seat.

CAUTION

Emergency Call (E-Call)

- E-Call* refers to emergency call. Pressing and holding the SOS button for 1~10 seconds triggers the E-Call system manually, and pressing and holding the button for 10-20 seconds does not.
- To cancel an emergency call made by mistake, press the SOS button a second time within five seconds.



- The E-Call system activates automatically in the event of airbag deployment.
- When triggered, the system automatically makes an emergency call and communicates the related vehicle and accident information to a public safety answering point.

CAUTION

- If pressed and held for over 20 seconds, the SOS button will be considered to be short-circuited (stuck). In that case, E-Call cannot be triggered manually.

CAUTION

- The dialed emergency call cannot be canceled manually. The E-Call system will begin 60-minute callback time after the call is hung up by the public safety answering

CAUTION

point or is not answered when it has been dialed 10 consecutive times.

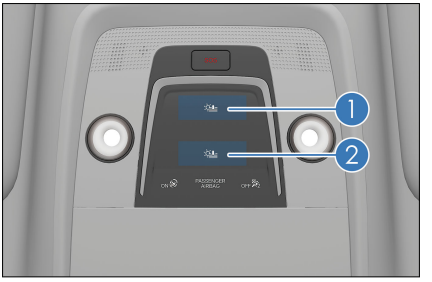
Status	LED Indicator	Beeping
Ignition off or E-Call system failure	Off	\
Power-on self-check mode	Flashing fast - 2 Hz	\
Ignition on and self-check passed	Solid on if self-check is passed	\
E-Call connecting	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call connected	Flashing - 1 Hz	A beep
E-Call ended	Solid on	Two beeps after E-Call ends
Callback time (60 minutes by default)	Flashing extremely slowly - 0.2 Hz	\

Panoramic Glass Roof

Opening/Closing the Sunshade*

Opening the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade open button ① to open the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade.
- Release the sunshade open button ① immediately after touching it. The sunshade opens automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, touch the ① or ② button midway.



Closing the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade close button ② to close the sunshade. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.
- If the sunshade has been initialized, releasing the button ② immediately after touching it closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, press button ① or ② midway.

CAUTION

- When opening or closing the sunroof sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain to prevent damage.

Initialization

- With the ignition on, try the following steps for initialization:
  - Press the close button to the fully closed position and hold on for at least 0.5 seconds to initialize the sunshade.
  - If the sunshade does not close fully, calibrate manually. Press and hold the sunroof/sunshade close button, and release it when the sunroof/sunshade stops moving. Hold the button again for at least seven seconds, and release it until the sunroof/sunshade is fully closed and a click sound is heard.

Interior Light Switch

Front Interior Lights

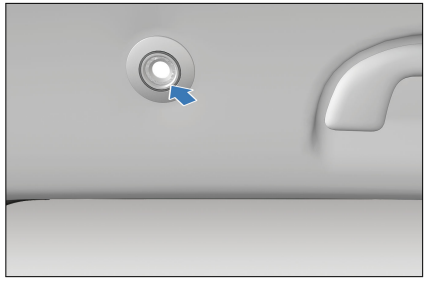
- Touch the interior lights to turn on or off the corresponding lights.



- To enable or disable "Auto Interior Lights", swipe down from the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.
- When the vehicle is not powered off, "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, opening any door and touching the interior light will switch the brightness between high and low levels instead of turning the light off.
- When the vehicle is powered off and "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, the interior lights will automatically turn off after the door has been open for a period of time. Any other operations during this period restart the timer.

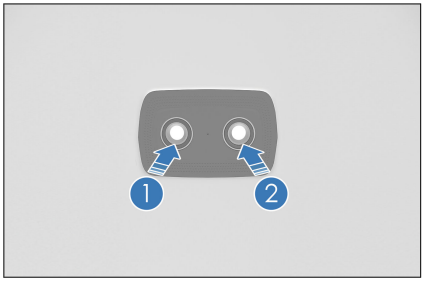
Rear side interior lights*

- Touch the rear side interior light to turn the light on. Touch again to turn it off.



Rear Interior Lights*

- Touch button ① to turn on the left light. Touch button ① again to turn it off.
- Touch button ② to turn on the right light. Touch button ② again to turn it off.


1
2

04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging..... 78
Batteries.....94
Usage Precautions.....99
Starting and Driving.....106
Driver Assistance..... 116

Charging/ Discharging

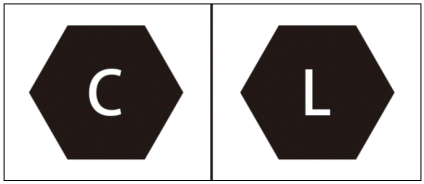
Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- Charging equipment uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charging may affect medical or implanted electronic devices. Consult the device manufacturer before charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in damp areas, or areas with fire or heat sources.
  - Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.
- Use charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Ensure the quality of charging equipment.
- Before charging:
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Do not charge the vehicle when the charging connector's or port's plug, socket, or metal terminals are loose or damaged by rust or corrosion.
  - When the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- Ensure that your hands are properly dry before charging.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, stop immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Always observe the following charging precautions to prevent damage to the vehicle:
  - Do not shake the charging connector, otherwise the vehicle charge port may be damaged.
  - Whenever possible, do not charge the vehicle in a thunderstorm, under risk of lightning strikes.
- Do not open the hood for maintenance while charging.
- After charging, do not disconnect the charging equipment with wet hands or while standing on any wet surface.
  - Before driving, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected from the charge port.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure*

- The signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, components of the local charging infrastructure (charging stations and sockets) and on the charging cable.



The signs refer to standardized charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.

Charging Precautions

- When the State of Charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately, otherwise the service life of the high-voltage battery and your driving experience will be affected.
- Mode 2 charging means charging with an AC charging connector that complies with local standards. It is recommended to use the dedicated AC lines and power sockets meeting local standards to avoid line damage and protective trip due to high-power charging, affecting the normal use of other equipment.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment (precautions for charging equipment):
  - Prevent the charging equipment from suffering any mechanical impact.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heat sources.
  - Never drop the equipment or move it by pulling it directly by the cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- Before charging:
  - Make sure that the charging connector and charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
  - Hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.
- When charging is complete:
  - Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
  - Hold the charging connector with one hand and remove the connector by pressing its button (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).
  - Do not force the charging connector out while the charge port is locked, otherwise the charge port may be damaged.
- Switch the ignition off before charging.
- Precautions:
  - The vehicle can be powered on to use the A/C normally while charging. To ensure the charging power, it is recommended to turn off the A/C.
  - It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
  - It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging.
- The vehicle system automatically stops charging when the high-voltage battery is fully charged. The charge port is equipped with an electronic lock. Unlock it before unplugging the charging equipment.
- To stop AC or DC charging, turn off the charger before disconnecting the charging connector. In Mode 2 charging, remove the charging connector and then the power plug.
- When charging is complete and the connector removed, make sure the

port cap is reinserted and port door closed.

- Before starting the vehicle, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected. The locking mechanism can damage the charging equipment and the vehicle if the vehicle is started with the charging connector incorrectly inserted.
- Battery temperatures that are too low or too high compromise vehicle charging performance.
  - The temperature control system can improve low-temperature charging capacity of the battery. Due to output capacity limitations of charging piles, the charging time is extended, the heating time becomes longer and the power consumption of heating is increased. This is a normal phenomenon.
  - For faster low-temperature DC charging, charging from low SOC is recommended because, due to the low battery temperature, the charging current is small for vehicles with high SOC in low-temperature environments.
  - To improve your experience, it is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it, as the battery is relatively hot and has better charging performance.
  - When the temperature is low, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a heated place indoors. If the charge port door is frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not force it open.
  - When the temperature is high, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a cool, ventilated place.
- Turning A/C on during low-temperature charging affects the performance of battery temperature control system and charging performance.
- It is normal that when the battery temperature control system is working during charging, the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The use of A/C may worsen battery temperature control system performance in DC charging at high temperatures, resulting in lower charging performance and longer charging time. To ensure charging efficiency, it is recommended to keep the A/C off during charging.
- When the heating or cooling function is enabled during charging, it is normal that both charging time and power consumption increase slightly.
- During charging, battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- During charging, the estimated remaining time to full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen. It is normal that the remaining time to full charge may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities. Before charging is completed, "Calculating..." is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If the charge port door is frozen due to weather or other reasons, it is suggested to warm up it with hot water and then open the port door. Do not force it open.
- If the vehicle will not be used for longer periods of time afterwards, make sure

to fully charge its high-voltage battery before use. In case of idle periods, it is recommended to charge the battery every three months in order to prolong its service life.

REMINDER

- Do not open the charge port door forcibly when it is locked.
- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.
- When the vehicle is charged with an external power supply, it is normal that the cooling fan and A/C compressor may operate automatically for the high-voltage battery to cool down.

REMINDER

Charging Mode

1. Charging Reservation (Only AC): Charge the vehicle regularly at a scheduled charging time set by the user.

   See reservation charging settings in this chapter for details.

2. Immediate charging: Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged.	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	Low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Replace the low-voltage battery.
	Charging equipment fails.	If it is verified that the charging equipment's power indicator is working properly, or that there are no other unusual indications, change the charging equipment or contact the charging equipment supplier.
	Vehicle display fails.	Verify that there is a charging system fault message on the instrument cluster, then stop the charging. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
Charging stops midway	The power grid goes down.	Charging will restart automatically after power is restored.
	Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	The charging connection switch* is pressed.	If the charging connection switch is pressed, the charging will stop. The charging connection should be connected again to start charging.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	The charging will automatically stop. Charge the vehicle when the battery temperature returns to a normal level.
	Vehicle or charging equipment fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check before charging:
  - Check the charging device for abnormalities such as cracked housing, worn cable, rusted plug, or foreign materials.
  - Do not charge when the charging connection becomes loose.
  - Make sure the port is clear of fluids or foreign objects, and its metal terminals are not rusty or corroded.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable

1. **Equipment**

- Connect the vehicle to an outlet that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- Use household sockets that meet the local standards to prevent line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other devices.
- This Mode 2 charging cable includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. The plug should be connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- See Charging Instructions for charging safety warnings.
- The highest working temperature allowed for the charging equipment is 50°C. Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.
- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- It is prohibited to modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and its ports.

WARNING

If a fault occurs, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/ connector.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment when the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly.

CAUTION

- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- See "Charging Instructions" for specific charging precautions.

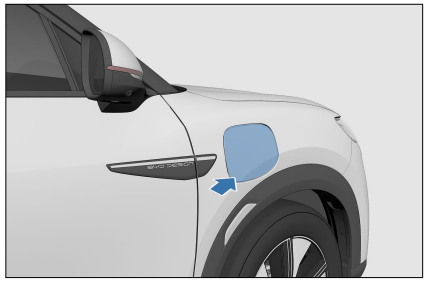
REMINDER

- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions: The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the grounding cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge, reducing the risk of electric shock. The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet.

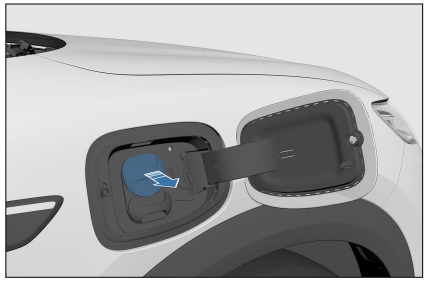
REMINDER

2. **Charging**

- Switch the ignition off.
- With the doors unlocked, press the charge port door to open.



- Open protective cap of the charging connector and vehicle socket. Make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



REMINDER

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.

- Connect to the power supply terminal:
  - Plug the Mode 2 charging cable into a household socket.
- Connect to the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
  - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen lights up.

CAUTION

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
- At this point, you can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen → → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**. See "Scheduled Charging" for the configuration process.
- During charging, the estimated time until full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster and may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.
- Reservation charging cannot be used when the battery is too low.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
  - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - If the immobilizer is deactivated on the infotainment touchscreen, press the mechanical button* of the charging connector and pull out the connector, or pull out the charging connector directly (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).
  - If the immobilizer is activated on the infotainment touchscreen, press the unlock button on the key or press the door handle microswitch with the key nearby, and then pull out the charging connector.

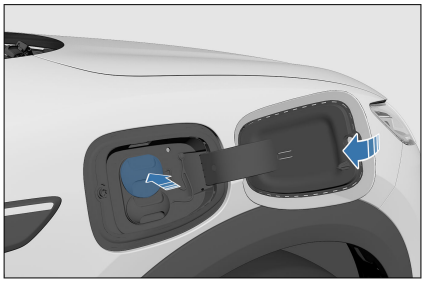
REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the immobilizer system is activated, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out promptly, or the port will re-lock.
- You can set the immobilizer system on the infotainment touchscreen → → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**, as detailed in "Charging Port Immobilizer System" in this chapter.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see "Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port" in "Charging Port Immobilizer System".

REMINDER

- If you cannot pull the charging connector out directly when the charge port's immobilizer system is deactivated, try to unlock the vehicle and pull it again.

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Store the charging equipment properly.



REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Using AC Charging Piles*

1. Equipment

- Single-phase AC charging box*
  - Use a standard-compliant household charging box. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
  - The single-phase AC charging box It consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
- Single-phase AC charging pile
  - Charge the vehicle using a public single-phase AC charging pile. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.
- AC charging connector*:
  - Mode 3 charging cable includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a plug/connector protective cover, and a charging cable. The plug is connected to the power outlet, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.

WARNING

- See section "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.

CAUTION

- The charging cable has a limited reach. Do not excessively stretch the cable.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to use early stop set for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.

REMINDER

- When using an AC charging connector, pay attention to the identification of power plug and charging connector in order to avoid reverse connection.

2. Charging

Use Mode 3 charging cable to connect your vehicle to the AC charging pile if no charging connector is provided, or

connect the vehicle to the AC charge pile/box by the charging connector of this pile/box to begin charging.

- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap：
  - Open the charge port door and the protection cover as per the instructions in Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.
- Connect to the power supply terminal:
  - Skip this step for AC charging boxes.
  - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
  - Use the AC charging connector to connect your vehicle to the single-phase AC charging pile with no charging connector.
- Connect to the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
- Charging settings:
  - Skip this step if an single-phase AC charging box or a public AC charging pile without any setting option is used.
  - For public single-phase AC charging pile/box with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile/box details.
- The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - At this time, you can schedule smart charging on the infotainment system.

3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
  - Press the unlock button on the smart key or press the door handle microswitch (while carrying the smart key), then the vehicle will stop charging.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Disconnect as per the instructions in Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.
- Disconnect the power plug.
  - If Mode 3 charging cable is used, it is recommended to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle first and then the plug from the charging point.
  - Skip this step for AC charging boxes.
  - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
- Close the AC charge port door (see instructions for Mode 2 charging).
- Store the equipment properly.
  - If an AC charging pile/box is used, place the charging connector in its designated location.
  - If Mode 3 charging cable is used, store it properly.

Using DC Charging Piles

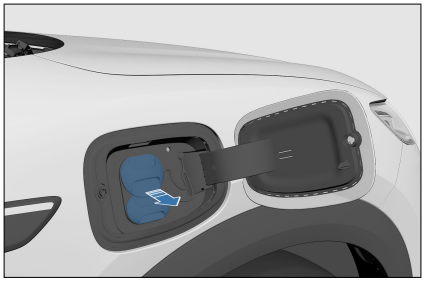
1. Equipment

- Use the DC battery charger in public places to charge the vehicle. Generally, it is installed in a specific charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Please check the instructions for the charger.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen.

2. Charging

DC charging is achieved by connecting the vehicle to a DC charger via its connector.

- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
- Connect the vehicle port:
  - Plug the connector into the port, making sure it is tight.
- Operate the charging equipment to start charging.



- The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

3. Stopping charging

- End the charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Press the mechanical lock button* of the DC charging connector to pull out the connector.
- When the DC charging pile charging is complete, organize the charging equipment and store the charging connector in its designated position properly.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.

WARNING

- See section "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.

CAUTION

- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking (see Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port). If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see "Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port" in "Charging Port Immobilizer System". After charging, if the charging connector cannot be pulled out, please contact our customer service immediately.
- To unlock the charge port after DC charging, press the unlock button twice within three seconds.
- See the charging instructions for specific charging precautions.

REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Smart Charging

- Smart charging encompasses scheduled charging and scheduled departure*. Scheduled charging allows you to customize the daily start time

of the charging session. Scheduled departure enables you to set a desired departure time, before which the vehicle is fully charged, and if needed, the cabin temperature is optimized and the battery is preheated.

- You can access the setting screen either through the infotainment system or voice control:
  - The corresponding settings can be made in infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**.
  - Say "Hi BYD, start smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*", "Hi BYD, I want to make smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*" , or "Hi BYD, please help me start smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*".
- To exit the setting screen:
  - Tap ⮌ or ⌂.
  - Say "Hi BYD, end smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*" or "Hi BYD, exit smart charging/scheduled charging/scheduled departure*".

REMINDER

- Scheduled charging and scheduled departure cannot be activated simultaneously.

Scheduled charging

① Scheduled charging switch

② Start and end time of charging

③ Repeat cycle

④ Switch to scheduled departure*

⑤ Settings



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the switch ① on, set the start and end time ② and repeat cycle ③, and save the settings.
- After the reservation is set up, if you connect the charging connector or press the power button to power off the vehicle during the charge waiting period, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen that scheduled charging has been set. Switch to instant charging if needed.
- You can tap the smart charging setting icon ⑤ to turn off the reminder for plugging in charger.
- Tap ④ to switch to scheduled departure.

CAUTION

- The scheduled charging function is developed for BYD's slow AC charging equipment only. Disable this function when using non-BYD-certified slow AC charging equipment. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of the high-voltage battery.

REMINDER

- The vehicle's power consumption may increase during the scheduled charging standby period. Prolonged standby may result in a reduction of the vehicle's state of charge (SOC) and driving range. This is considered a normal condition.
- The instant charging option on the reminder screen is valid for the current reservation only. To cancel all reservations, toggle charging reservation off on the corresponding setting screen.
- Scheduled charging is dedicated for BYD AC charging piles. If you need to use this function in a public charging facility, make sure it supports scheduling from the vehicle system.
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process, the infotainment system still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins immediately after a DC charging connector is connected.

Scheduled departure*

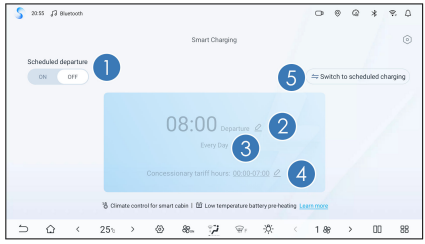
① Scheduled departure switch

② Scheduled departure time

③ Repeat cycle

④ Concessionary tariff hours

⑤ Switch to scheduled charging



- To schedule a charging for departure, toggle the switch ① on, set the intended departure time ②, choose from single-use, daily, or customized repeat cycle options at ③, fill out the concessionary tariff hours ④, and save the settings.
- The system optimizes charging by utilizing off-peak hours, ensuring it completes charging when the power price is lower. If the remaining charging time is longer than the remaining travel duration or the concessionary tariff hours, the vehicle initiates immediate charging to maximize the amount of energy it can acquire.
- The preheating function ensures the battery performs well in low-temperature conditions, ready for optimal performance.
- The intelligent cabin temperature control pre-cools or warms the cabin, ahead of the scheduled departure, ensuring a cozy environment.
- Tap ⑤ to switch to scheduled charging.

REMINDER

- When the SOC reaches a critically low level, the vehicle is charged to a minimum level before scheduled charging begins.
- Ensuring full charge, if not complete after the concessionary

REMINDER

tariff hours, the vehicle continues charging until it is fully charged.

- When the vehicle is powered on, low-temperature battery preheating and cabin temperature control are deactivated, but the scheduled charging during concessionary tariff hours are still in effect.
- If the current time exceeds the scheduled departure time, both battery preheating and cabin temperature control are deactivated.
- Battery preheating and cabin temperature control incur a temporary battery usage.
- Battery preheating and cabin temperature control are only available when the SOC is above 40%.

AC Charging with Limited Current*

- To set the AC charging current limit, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**. The vehicle restricts its maximum AC charging current based on your set value.
- Upon restarting, the system retains the prior setting. To disable the limit, set it to **MAX** before or during the charging session, enabling full capacity charging, which is limited by the grid's capacity.

REMINDER

- The actual charging current might be lower than the set value due to equipment and grid restrictions.

Smart Charging

- If the high-voltage battery has sufficient power, it will charge the low-voltage battery when the latter is detected to be low.

REMINDER

- When the vehicle is stored for a long time, the smart charging function may be activated automatically. it is normal that smart charging takes place.
- Power for smart charging comes from the high-voltage battery pack, so it is normal that an SOC decrease is noticed when the vehicle is powered on.

Discharging Device*

- This vehicle features a vehicle to load (V2L) function.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket, in-vehicle discharge socket, or vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires to prevent it from falling

WARNING

and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.

- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the discharging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, please refer to the precautions for charging equipment included in item 3 of Charging Precautions.
- Before discharging, please confirm the vehicle SOC and estimate the remaining driving range.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.

REMINDER

- The V2L function is recommended only when SOC is high.
- The V2L function is restricted when the vehicle SOC is low.
- To ensure the driving range, the discharging power is limited at low temperature.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the V2L connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging/charging connector when the device is not used is recommended.

REMINDER

extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging/charging connector when the device is not used is recommended.

External Discharging

Starting discharging

- Before discharging, unlock the vehicle (disarm the anti-theft alarm system).
- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
  - Open the charge port door and the protection cover as per the instructions in Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.
- Check before discharging:
  - Ensure that the battery capacity of the vehicle to be discharged is not below 15%.
  - Ensure the V2L connection device casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.
  - In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Connect the discharge connection device:
  - Connect the V2L discharge device to the charge port and the external electrical plug to the discharging socket (the external plug shall be connected properly to ensure the contact between the plug end surface and the socket end surface).

At this time, the socket indicator becomes solid red, indicating that the socket can be used.

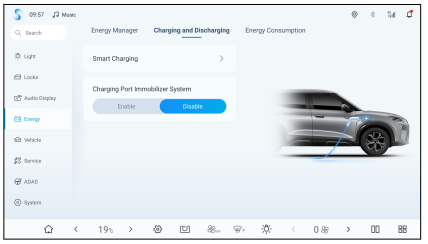
- Discharging starts:
  - After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

3. Stopping discharging

- Stop discharging:
  - Disconnect the load.
- Disconnect the discharge connection device:
  - Unplug the discharging device.
  - Close the charge port cap and the port door (see instructions for Mode 2 charging).
- Organizing the equipment:
  - Store the equipment properly when discharging is complete.

Charging Port Immobilizer System

- In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft during charging and discharging. The charging port immobilizer system is disabled by default. To enable it, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging/Discharging**.



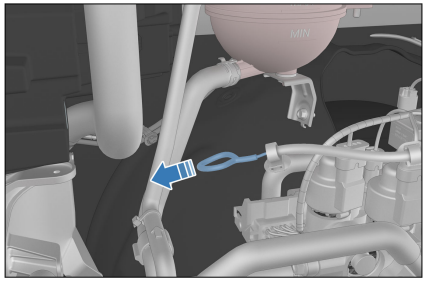
- When the function is enabled, unlock the vehicle and unplug the charging connector during charging in the following ways:
  - When it is on OFF status, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's side door to unlock (with the smart key nearby).
  - Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.

⚠ CAUTION

- After the charging connector is unlocked, it has to be pulled out promptly, or the port will re-lock after a while.
- After the vehicle is fully charged, the charging connector will be automatically unlocked when the anti-theft mode of the charge port is disabled. When this mode is enabled, the charging connector must be manually unlocked following the above steps.

Emergency Unlocking of Charge Port

- When charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the anti-theft lock, unlock the charge port manually.
- Open the hood. A lock latch can be found inside. Pull the latch to unlock the charging connector.
- Reset the emergency cable latch after unlocking.



CAUTION

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Driving Range Display*

- The range display mode can be set to improve driving experience. The default setting is standard mode.
- The corresponding settings are accessible on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio Display** → **Instrument**.
  - Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
  - Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorized by the system.
  - When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- When the Dynamic driving range display mode is set:

REMINDER

- The driving range that is displayed after a full charge may vary, depending on calculations of the energy consumed the last time the vehicle is used.
- The driving range actually displayed will be adjusted based on the state of the vehicle's air conditioner, the driving mode (ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, etc.) selected, and the driver's driving habits, so as to match the vehicle's actual driving range.

Energy Regeneration Settings

- During the driving, energy is recovered through regenerative brakes when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- The regenerative braking intensity can be set with the regenerative mode button or on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - **Standard**: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers energy in the standard level, and the vehicle deceleration is in the standard level.
  - **High**: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers more energy, and the vehicle deceleration is high.
- The corresponding settings can be made in infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager**.
- You can select the regeneration intensity based on the deceleration sense when releasing the accelerator

pedal. Different deceleration senses deliver different driving experiences.

- The set energy regeneration intensity will be memorized. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the regenerative braking mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- Do not adjust the regenerative braking intensity while driving at high speeds, as you may be distracted, resulting in accidents.

- The power of the whole vehicle is weaker at low battery level than that at high battery level.

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- The vehicle is powered by a high-voltage battery that can be charged and discharged repeatedly. The high-voltage battery is charged by an external power source or through energy recovery when the vehicle brakes or coasts.

CAUTION

- The high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, so be careful to avoid bumping when driving on bumpy or uneven roads. If bumping occurs, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

REMINDER

- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery

REMINDER

itself, the battery capacity of vehicles that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their mileage will reduce. When you find that the mileage of your vehicle has decreased, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for check. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of mileage is normal.

Battery Properties

- It is normal that vehicle performance is affected by battery electrochemical properties and self-protection and varies to some extent in the following conditions:
  - When SOC is high, the regenerative braking performance may decline.
  - The vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC. If the charging time is prolonged, the estimated remaining charging time displayed on the instrument cluster may not be accurate.
  - When SOC is low, the acceleration performance may decline.
  - When the high-voltage battery is low, V2L is unavailable. Charge the battery promptly.
  - At high or low temperatures, it is normal that the charging and discharging capabilities of the high-voltage battery decline, and the charging time is prolonged. For fast charging, high-power charging equipment is recommended. Power performance may also decline under extreme temperatures.

- When charging in low temperatures, the temperature control system can significantly improve charging capability. See Charging Precautions for details.
- When the vehicle is used at low temperatures, the battery's temperature control system will start heating the battery as appropriate to ensure the driving power and discharging performance and improve your driving experience. When the vehicle is driven over short distances, heating may be ineffective, which increases power consumption and decreases driving range.

- When the high-voltage battery is normal, the driving range of the vehicle varies with the following factors:
  - Driving habit: For example, the range in frequent acceleration or deceleration is shorter than that at constant speeds, and the range is shorter when driving at high speeds than when at low speeds.
  - Road conditions: For example, the range driven in rough conditions or on long slopes is shorter than that in normal conditions and on even roads.
  - Temperature: The driving range at low temperatures is shorter than that at room temperatures.
  - Use of electric equipment: For example, the range driven with A/C on is shorter than that with A/C off.
  - Usable capacity of the high-voltage battery is lower in cold weather and reduces as the temperature decreases. If the vehicle with high battery level is charged at low temperatures, the SOC may quickly jump to 100%.
  - The available battery capacity decreases as the vehicle is used over time.

Battery Usage Tips

- It is recommended to use the vehicle at temperatures between -10°C to 40°C. When SOC is low, timely charge the vehicle to ensure enough driving range and good acceleration performance.
- To ensure long term performance, avoid driving in extreme temperatures for over 24 hours.
- In low ambient temperatures, if the vehicle must be stored for a long time, it can be placed in an underground garage or other warmer area to reduce loss of battery heat, maintaining vehicle performance.
- Frequent and sudden acceleration or deceleration should be avoided. Drive the vehicle on flat and dry roads. When necessary, turn off high-power equipment such as A/C or adjust the A/C temperature to reduce power consumption of such devices and increase the driving range.
- When the vehicle is used for the first time or after a long idle period, the SOC displayed on the instrument cluster may not be correct. It is recommended to fully charge the vehicle first.
- For optimal battery performance, it is recommended to fully charge the vehicle at a regular basis (at least once a week), and fully charge it from low battery (SOC <10%) once every three to six months.
- Under extreme working conditions (such as frequent sudden acceleration/ deceleration) that cause battery overheating, if the temperature of high-voltage battery is excessively high, it is normal for discharging

capability to decrease gradually. If the battery temperature keeps rising, the fault warning light lights up on the instrument cluster. In that case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- When the battery SOC increases or decreases abnormally, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

WARNING

In the event of an emergency or accident, be aware of the following warnings:

- To avoid personal injury, do not touch the high-voltage battery directly.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible.
- If the high-voltage battery is damaged and leaking fluid, avoid any contact with the fluid. If it comes into contact with skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water, and seek immediate medical attention.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use dedicated fire extinguishers instead of water-based fire extinguishers.

CAUTION

- To ensure safety of the high-voltage battery, stop the vehicle away from flammable and explosive materials, ignition sources and various hazardous chemicals.
- Prolonged exposure to heat sources and direct sunlight reduce

CAUTION

the service life of the high-voltage battery.

- Do not add battery coolant by users themselves. If needed, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- No one is allowed to enter the vehicle when the battery pack needs to be repaired.

High-Voltage Battery Recycling

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the BYD recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organization to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorization, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery

The low-voltage battery (12 V battery) is located under the rear seat.

- The battery works in normal, sleep, ultra-low power, or low voltage protection mode. The purpose is to protect the battery cell from damage. If the vehicle system is in good condition, the vehicle switches between these modes automatically, having no effect on your use of the vehicle.
- To prevent the SOC of the low-voltage battery becoming too low, the intelligent charging function is triggered automatically when conditions are met (ignition off, high-voltage battery discharging allowed, and low-voltage battery level below the design value).
- When the intelligent charging function is triggered, the low-voltage battery is charged through the high-voltage battery. Therefore, it is normal that the SOC or the pure-electric driving range displayed on the instrument cluster decreases when the vehicle is powered on after an idle period.
- If intelligent charging fails, the low-voltage battery may cut off the vehicle's power supply. If you find before use that the vehicle is not powered, try to activate the low-voltage battery by pressing the driver's door microswitch continuously, and immediately power on the vehicle to charge the low-voltage battery. It is recommended to charge it for more than one hour.

WARNING

- The low-voltage battery contains a corrosive solution. To prevent damage to the battery or injury, do not disassemble or repair the battery.
- Do not disassemble or dismantle the low-voltage battery. Any organization or individual to do so shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents.
- Since the low-voltage battery may produce combustible and explosive hydrogen gas, use tools in such a manner that the battery would not produce sparks. Do not smoke or use open flames near the battery.
- Avoid electrolyte contact with eyes, skin or clothing. In case that happens, use baking soda water to clean the skin, and plenty of water to rinse the eyes, and immediately seek medical attention.
- In case of mouth contact with the electrolyte, seek medical attention immediately.
- Keep children away from the low-voltage battery.

CAUTION

- The low-voltage battery contains relays. Thus, it is normal that relay operating sounds may be emitted from the battery.
- The low-voltage battery shall be charged with professional charging tools, and shall not be removed for recharging by users themselves.
- The low-voltage battery has a built-in power manager. Do not disassemble or repair the battery to avoid damaging the battery or causing personal injuries.
- The low-voltage battery needs to communicate with the vehicle for normal use, so it is important to

CAUTION

connect its connector and wiring harness correctly.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

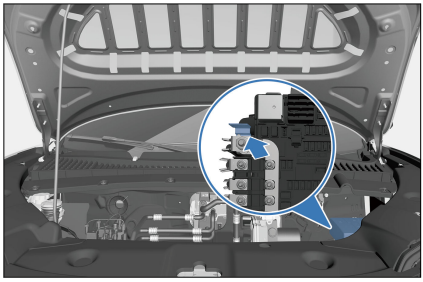
Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch:

- The low-voltage battery features the dormant/wake-up function. The low-voltage battery may have entered a dormant state after long-term parking. In that case, the vehicle cannot be located or unlocked with the smart key. To wake up the vehicle, hold the smart key close to the driver's door and then press and hold the microswitch on the door. When unlocked, the vehicle can be used as normal. If these actions cannot wake up the vehicle, the low-voltage battery may have been exhausted.

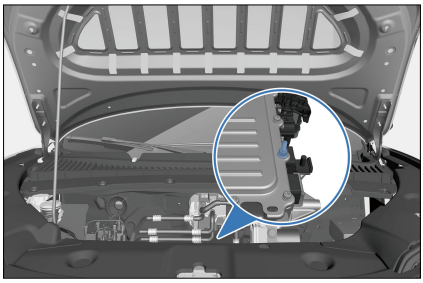
Wake-up by jump start:

If the vehicle cannot be waked up by using the microswitch, use a 12V power supply and two specially designed cables to jump start the vehicle.

- Positive terminal for jump starting: inside the under-hood power distribution box (PDB)



- Negative terminal for jump starting: Unpainted metal on the front motor assembly, such as the bolt shown in the illustration.



WARNING

- Never jump start another vehicle. This may damage the low-voltage battery.
- If the low-voltage battery is too low or the battery fails, jump starting may be required. Carefully read and strictly follow the jump starting instructions in this manual.
- Before jump starting, check the battery conditions. Do not jump start the vehicle with freezing electrolyte.
- Make sure the environment is well-ventilated and free from any fire sources.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble this battery without permission, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with water, but wipe it with a cloth instead.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that jump starting be performed under professional guidance due to the limited operating space and electrical risks in the under-hood PDB area.
- Use a 12–14.2 V jump-starting power supply and limit each jump-starting attempt to one minute, or the low-voltage battery may be damaged.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 2,000 km in economic mode. Steady driving instead of high-speed driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:
  - Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Avoid speeding.
  - Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
  - Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.

Trailer Towing*

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.

The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum towing capacity	750 kg	Maximum total towing capacity allowed
Maximum vertical load	75 kg	Maximum vertical load allowed on ball joint

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tires inflated to 270 kPa and rear tires to 270 kPa.
- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.

- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In these instances, the vehicle speed must not exceed 100 km/h and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa above the tire pressure recommended for normal use.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer due to failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.
- For detailed towing instructions, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The tow bar is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles to prevent vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

CAUTION

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolong the battery usage:

- When the vehicle is not to be operated for an extended period (over seven days), it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%-60%, or it will reduce high-voltage battery service life.
- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over three months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%-60%. Otherwise, over-discharge may lead to battery performance degradation or even

damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.

- During operation of the vehicle, if the instrument cluster displays the driving mileage as 0, it indicates the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the high-voltage battery in time and avoid operating the vehicle with low SOC for a long time.
- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- To maintain long-term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to an environment with a temperature above 60°C or below -30°C for over 24 hours.
- If the tray dented inward or there is scarification under the battery package tray, it is suggested to check at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid operating the vehicle continuously for a long time whenever possible; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- If the instrument cluster mulfunctions when driving, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

REMINDER

- If the meter drops to 0, the battery must be recharged. If it is not recharged within 7 days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by BYD warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits. Compared with under normal temperatures, the driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving energy is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life.
- Here are some tips for saving energy and repair cost:

1. Regenerative braking setting:

- The vehicle is provided with an energy regeneration function. To set the energy regeneration intensity, operate the regenerative braking mode button or go to the infotainment touchscreen. In high energy recovery mode, more energy is recovered during vehicle braking and coasting. Please set to suit to your driving habits.

2. Maintaining constant speed:

- Constant speeds save energy. Sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking increase consumption.

- Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Additional energy is consumed each time the accelerator is pushed.
- Acceleration should be gradual. Avoid sudden startup, acceleration, or deceleration.
- Prevent emergency braking, and subsequent brake wear, by keeping an appropriate distance from vehicles ahead, and paying attention to traffic lights.
- Congested roads increase energy consumption.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. The higher the speed, the higher the consumption. Maintaining vehicle speed within the economical speed range can save power.

3. Reducing load:

- Consumption is higher when air conditioning is used. Turn off the A/C to reduce power consumption. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode.
- Do not overload the vehicle unnecessarily. Excessive weights will add the load of vehicle, increasing energy consumption.

4. Other tips:

- Make sure tire pressure is correct. Low tire pressure increases energy consumption and wear.
- Keep front wheels properly aligned, avoid driving into curbstones, and drive slowly in rough terrain. Misalignment of the front wheels not only increases tire wear, but also increases load on the powertrain and power consumption.
- Keep the bottom of the vehicle clean and mud free. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- The glove box, storage boxes on interior trim panels and seatback pockets are designed for small and light objects, while the trunk for large and heavy objects.
- Long items can be loaded by folding the rear seat backrests. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's operating functions.

Carrying Items in the Passenger Area

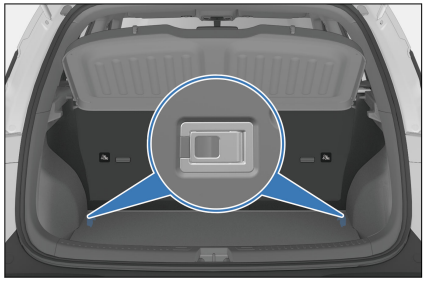
- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Do not place any objects on the inner side of rear windshield. Otherwise, these objects will block the driver's line of sight and will be thrown here and there inside the vehicle in case of collision.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seats' seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

REMINDER

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Loading the Trunk

- Place luggage evenly in the trunk. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.
- The side panels of the trunk are equipped with luggage anchors.



Roof Rack*

- Storing luggage on the roof rack will increase overall energy consumption and change the way the vehicle drives and handles.
- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Try to load the roof beam evenly and keep the center of gravity low. Loads on the roof rack may elevate the overall center of gravity, which might alter your driving experience.
- When driving a heavily loaded vehicle, take extra precautions, drive slowly, and increase your following distance.
- The maximum recommended load evenly distributed over the beam is: 75kg.

CAUTION

- Luggage must not be put on the roof metal sheet directly. The roof metal sheet is not designed for loading.
- Use the roof rack properly and fasten the luggage on the beam.
- Make sure the luggage is securely fastened on the roof rack before driving and during parking.

Wading into Water

- Before driving into flooded areas, check the water depth and make sure it does not exceed the vehicle's lower edge.
- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner and keep acceleration steady to slowly cross over.



- Never stop, back up, or turn off the vehicle in flooded areas.
- Be careful when driving through deep water, as brakes may get wet.
- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the disks and recover brake performance.
- Do not wade into water unless necessary.

WARNING

- Drive carefully to avoid accidents when there is any water or slurry in the braking system, as this may increase the brake response time, thus extending the braking distance.
- Carefully apply any wet brake, and remove ice or water on it.
- Avoid emergency braking as far as possible after driving through any waterlogged road section.

WARNING

- If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road, prevent water from entering the motor, otherwise the motor will be damaged seriously. Such damaged is not covered by the vehicle's warranty
- After the vehicle drives through waterlogged road sections, vehicle components, such as drive system, driving system and automotive electric system may also be damaged seriously. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty either.
- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the doorsill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for testing and troubleshooting.
- Do not drive the vehicle on the road where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tires.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. This significantly affects the

safety and service performance of the vehicle.

- The reduced ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance due to water in high-voltage components pose a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach 60-70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed position regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems and light fixtures may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire.
  - Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating. Fuses or other replacement wires in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - To ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher in case of an accident.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses:
  - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odors in the vehicle body. When abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. It is best to park the vehicle in a windproof place, and then put out the fire using the fire extinguisher in the vehicle.
  - Call the fire alarm in time, and also dial the insurance company's reporting number and ask the company to come to the fire site for handling.
  - Look for the ignition point. If the cabin is smoking, do not open the hood immediately. (Doing so will let a large amount of air in and cause fire spreading. There is limited comburent in the cabin. Keeping the

hood closed can control the fire so that the fire can be easily put out). Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the hood gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the hood to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside.

- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

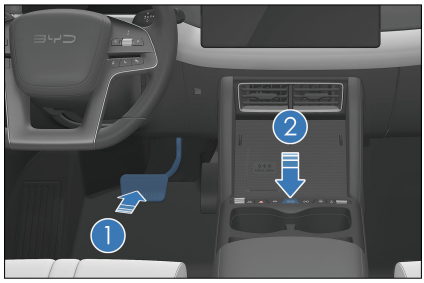
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance (fire loss, theft, etc.) is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ① and press the START/STOP button ② at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the instrument cluster illuminates, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to Drive or Reverse, and then the electronic parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving the vehicle until hearing a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.



Situations when the vehicle cannot power on

- The vehicle cannot power on in the following situations:
  - After you press the START/STOP button, the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster. This means that the key is not in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, trunk, or storage compartment.
- Pressing the Start/Stop button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the instrument cluster flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed, the key battery may have run out. Replace the electronic smart key battery as soon as possible and see ***P218***.
  - Except for causes mentioned above, the smart access and start system also fails to work normally under some conditions due to different service environments. See ***P54*** for details.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies:

- Engage the parking brake firmly.

- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Shift to Park or Neutral.
- The ignition is switched off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the smart key start button for over 15 seconds.

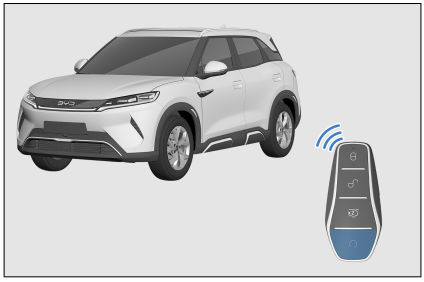
CAUTION

- Do not touch the power button while driving.

Remote Start

Starting the vehicle

1. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals will flash three times.
2. If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle stops and powers off, and turn signals flash twice.



3. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds. The vehicle powers off, and turn signals flash twice.

Auto Power On/Off*

- Enable auto power on/off, disabled by factory default, in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive**/**Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**.
- When auto power-on is enabled, power on the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Unlock with a valid smart key, microswitch, NFC key*, or BYD App*, and then open the driver's door for the first time while carrying a valid key.
  - Method 2: Carry a valid smart key, NFC key*, or use BYD App*, and press the brake pedal. The vehicle is ready to drive.
- When auto power-off is enabled, power off the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Press the START/STOP button.
  - Method 2: Shift to Park, and lock from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch or NFC key*.

REMINDER

- Auto power-on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.
- If a door other than the driver's door is first opend after unlocking:
  - When the ignition is still off, opening the driver's door the first time switches it on.
  - When the ignition has been switched on and then off, opening the driver's door does not switches it back on.

REMINDER

- When auto power-on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.
- Auto power-on is not operational when the hood is open.
- To prevent false triggering, BYD App* can only lock but not power off the vehicle.

Driving

Safety Check before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be taken to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tires: Check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and any cracks in the battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.

Check after starting

- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

Preparations before Driving

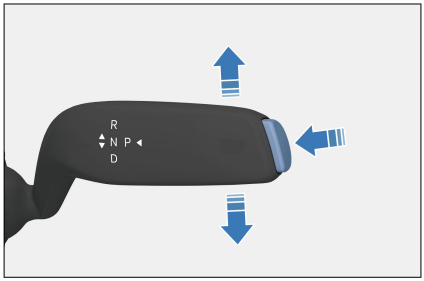
- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear shift controls is marked on the gearshift

lever. Pull the lever up or down to switch between "R", "N" and "D" and press the button on the end of the lever to switch to the "P" position.

- After starting the vehicle, press the brake pedal and pull the lever up or down, and you may shift from "P" to another position.
- "P" gear is for parking. Press the button to park the vehicle.



WARNING

- To prevent damaging the transmission, press the "P" button only after the vehicle has completely stopped.

- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. Under all circumstances, always shift to Park before the driver gets out.
- "D": Drive. Shift to D position to drive the vehicle normally.
- Turn the ignition on before shifting into "D".
- Shifting out of Park or into a driving gear requires pressing the brake pedal. For details, see the prompt message on the instrument cluster.
- To prevent unintended vehicle movement, press the "P" button once the vehicle has stopped completely. The electronic parking brake (EPB) is automatically applied and the EPB indicator lights up.
- If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position automatically after it is released.

WARNING

- Transmission may be seriously damaged due to lack of lubrication if the vehicle is allowed to move for too long after the motor is turned off and "N" gear is engaged.
- When the motor is running and the vehicle is in the "R"/"D" gear, always stop the vehicle by stepping on the brake pedal, as there is still force transmitted from the actuator and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.
- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- Never shift to "R" or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving, in order to prevent accidents.
- It is not recommended to allow the vehicle to go down a ramp when it is in the "N" or "P" gear, even if the vehicle is not started.
- If the EPB indicator fails to turn on after the vehicle is shifted into "P" go to the infotainment touchscreen to enable the EPB. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

Drop down the shortcut menu to activate EPB. When the vehicle is not in Park and EPB is released, pressing the brake pedal engages EPB to apply an appropriate parking brake force. The indicator on the instrument cluster flashes and then becomes steady on to indicate that EPB is engaged. The "EPB activated" message is also displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Engaging EPB automatically is designed to improve vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. For safety reasons, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Switching the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB engages automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.
- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop. If the driver's door is opened while the gear is in Drive or Reverse, the vehicle will be automatically shifted to Park and the EPB will be engaged. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Refrain from excessively utilizing the automatic EPB engagement triggered by opening the driver's door, as it may result in the EPB not engaging properly or insufficient clamping force, leading to rollaway risks. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.
- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise the vehicle may slip back.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from "P" or "N" into a driving gear such as "D" or "R". EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test (POST). In this process, the EPB system does not respond to any function.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been started and the gear is in a driving gear such as "D" or "R", engage EPB manually, then simply press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and (P) turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- During driving, if the braking fails or is blocked, continue to press the P gear switch for over two seconds for emergency braking.

WARNING

- For safety considerations, refrain from using EPB for braking in normal driving. It is preferred to be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends

WARNING

or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any possible accident.

CAUTION

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the EPB for braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.

EPB Trailer Mode

The EPB trailer mode is designed for the situation when EPB is automatically engaged with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for towing, or when it malfunctions, you can switch on the trailer mode to exit parking with EPB.

- Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Drive**/ **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**.
- EPB trailer mode can be activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.

CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met,

CAUTION

a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.

- After activating the EPB trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the EPB trailer mode.
- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.

- EPB trailer mode can exit when any of the following conditions is met:
  - Disable the EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in several seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. The (!) indicator on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in several seconds. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

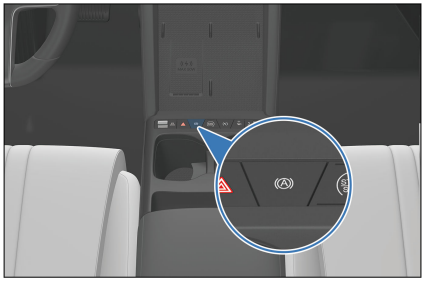
- To prevent the vehicle from moving, the vehicle must be in "P" gear and make sure that EPB is engaged before getting off.
- The EPB switch must not be operated when the vehicle is moving.
- When the EPB switch is pulled or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Automatic vehicle hold (AVH): The automatic vehicle hold (AVH) is activated automatically when the moving vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, press the AVH switch to enable the function. The AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.



AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.
- The AVH is off by factory default.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ on the instrument cluster is solid on.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ lighting up and gear shifted into Park.
  - Shift into "D", drive the vehicle normally, then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH.

AVH exits

- When the AVH function runs normally, the following actions make AVH exit and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park automatically:
  - Open the driver's door.
  - Unlock the driver's seat belt.
  - The gear status is in Drive when the vehicle stops, and EPB is enabled.
  - Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- Shifting into Reverse, AVH goes into slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (R gear) or traveling (shift into D gear from R gear) at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated and stays in standby status to improve vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

Driving Precautions

- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged obstacles.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet brakes. To keep brakes dry, drive carefully and press the brake pedal gently.
- Drive carefully on slippery roads, such as roads covered in ice, snow or sand, or surfaces such as wet ceramic tiles or epoxy resin. Avoid parking on slopes to prevent vehicle sliding.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating in a wrong way.

REMINDER

- The battery is located in the vehicle's chassis. Make sure to avoid bumping when driving.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Do not leave the vehicle with ignition on.
- Remember to carry the smart key when leaving the vehicle.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.

REMINDER

- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the power system and electrical components.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
  - Improper coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check batteries and cables conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged when winter comes.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - These can be found in the BYD authorized dealer or service provider and the auto parts stores.
  - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender.

- Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.

- It is recommended to carry emergency tools or items for different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Snow Chain Instructions

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on front wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Some snow chains may damage the tires, wheels, suspension, or vehicle body. It is recommended to use thin snow chains with a thickness or diameter no greater than 10 mm to ensure adequate clearance between the tires and other components inside the wheel well.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimize wear of tires and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- Driving speed must not exceed 30 km/h or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.

REMINDER

- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Install the chains symmetrically on the left and right sides and remove them immediately after driving out of snowy or muddy roads.
- If abnormal noise is heard from the snow chain, it indicates that the chain may contact vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.
- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.
- Engage EPB before installing snow chains.
- Do not install snow chains with insufficient tire pressure.
- When using snow chains, be careful not to damage the wheel rims.

Winter Tires

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber mixture and tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent

braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7°C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

Driver Assistance

Driver Assistance System

- The functions of the driver assistance system are divided into two categories: driving assist and safety assist.
  - Driving assist: It includes two functions with varying levels of intelligence: adaptive cruise control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC), designed to assist the driver in driving.
  - Safety assist: provides front*, side*, and rear* safety assistance functions to help the driver maintain safe driving.

WARNING

- Before using the driver assistance system, the driver should carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and accompanying documents. The driver should fully understand the system-related information, including but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations, descriptions of each function, applicable scenarios, operating methods, and precautions. Strict compliance with the operating instructions is required; otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur. Unless otherwise required by applicable laws and regulations, BYD assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, relevant agreements, or accompanying documents.
- The system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace your judgment and operation. When using the system, the driver must comply with local traffic laws and regulations, always keep their hands on the steering wheel, remain alert, and continuously monitor the surroundings for potential hazards. The driver must intervene or take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving. Failure to do so may result in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

WARNING

- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are intended to provide clear and concise instructions during system operation. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle and must continuously monitor the vehicle status, system operation, surrounding environment, and relevant targets. In the event of system limitations or unexpected scenarios, immediate manual intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur.
- The driver shall use the driver assistance system in accordance with local laws and regulations, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic data through the system. BYD bear no responsibility for any illegal activities resulting from misuse, improper use, or unauthorized modification of the system functions or services. BYD reserves the right to temporarily disable system functions or even terminate services to the user. Additionally, BYD reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for submission to authorized agencies in accordance with legal procedures.

CAUTION

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist

CAUTION

the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace your judgment and operation. Although the system provides a certain level of assistance, it cannot address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver remains fully responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure compliance with local traffic laws and regulations at all times.

Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

The vehicle is equipped with sensors such as MmWave radars and cameras.

Sensor cleaning and maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the front windshield is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the front windshield may affect the system working.
- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean and maintain accordingly. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider when necessary.
- Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions:
  - If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, it is recommended to melt it using warm

water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. After melting, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.

- If the radar or camera lens housing surface is adhered with dust, mud spots (including muddy water stains), bird droppings, or other contaminants, it is recommended to rinse with running water or windshield-specific cleaning solution until the dirt and adhered contaminants soften or detach. Afterward, wipe the surface clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
- If the radar or camera lens housing surface has moisture or condensation, it is recommended to wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
- When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, it is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current environment so as to resolve the sensoring faults due to obstructions, with no further actions required.

- Cleaning and maintenance tips:
  - When the windshield fogs up or there is a risk of fogging, it is recommended to turn on the windshield defrosting function to prevent fogging or frosting on the windshield.
  - Using a neutral cleaning agent (such as soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After cleaning, rinse the radar housing surface with clean water first, and then wipe it dry with a clean lint-free cloth.
  - Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar housing area, as these actions may impair radar sensing performance.
  - Do not use a cleaning brush to clean the radar or camera, as sand or debris mixed into the brush may cause scratches on the lens housing and casing.
  - Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause the lens housing to crack.
  - Do not wipe the radar cover forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating of the lens housing.
  - Do not use metal or other hard objects to scrape the contaminants or ice and snow on the surface of the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
  - Avoid spraying directly on the radars and cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water.
  - The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers. To avoid affecting radar performance, keep the bumpers clean. Do not paint, add body kits, or install metal or alloy (including electroplated) decorative parts on the bumpers, as this may impair radar functionality.

Sensor limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
  - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots when perceiving the surrounding environment.

- Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as incorrectly identifying the distance or speed of objects, or detecting objects when none are present.
- Radar and camera sensors may miss a target, such as partially identifying or failing to detect vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles. M

- Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false detection or missed detection. Carefully read the limitations of the driver assistance system.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid, ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement cleaner, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean radar and camera lens housings and casings.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install or use parts not approved by BYD or make modifications not approved by BYD.
- If the front windshield, fender, side mirror, bumper or trunk lid need to be replaced, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to ensure proper disposal of radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor (radar or camera) is installed is damaged or collided with, causing the sensors to become misaligned or damaged, the system may fail to work. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check.

WARNING

- After a radar or camera is replaced, calibrate in time according to this manual. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features employee multi-sensor fusion algorithm. Various factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including improper operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users.

Device issues (including user-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not calibrated, are damaged, or covered by objects such as ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metal railings, and water reflection on the road.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.

- Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windshield, side mirrors, body panels (for example, fenders and tailgate), frame, or other components.

- Trailer hitches or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.
- Interference or obstruction is caused by bike rack or other non-standard accessories installed at the rear of the vehicle.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (paint thickness changes) applied or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, or car covers) attached.
- Do not use steering wheel cover on vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors. They could give rise to malfunctions.
- Cases where system performance may be reduced include but are not limited to:
  - The brake pads are excessively worn or the braking system malfunctions.
  - Tires are improperly inflated or worn out.
  - Unqualified tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - A small spare tire or tire repair kit is used.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.

Environment of use

- Radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, causing the system to accelerate the vehicle unexpectedly.
- The system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The system cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
- The vehicle is operating in extreme weather, such as heavy rain, snow, fog, or smog, or on icy and slippery curves.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane lines are excessively worn, blocked, or covered, have disappeared, are overlapping old ones, have been adjusted in road constructions or change rapidly.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light

conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, or nighttime).

- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is extremely hot or cold.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may be mistaken for speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognize the sign completely or clearly.
- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (for example manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (for example areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- There are close-proximity non-motorized vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys, strollers, and shopping carts), animals, or pedestrians (especially children).
- There are stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, or irregularly shaped vehicles, such as engineering vehicles, flatbed trucks, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo.
- Irregularly shaped obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, traffic barriers, and traffic cones, and other obstacles are difficult for the system to identify.
- Vehicles have large areas of monotonous background colors.
- The traffic is complex where vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appearing suddenly and approaching rapidly, or there are on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll stations

WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance features. Instead, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection and servicing.
- For safety, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all instructions to avoid feature deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, the

WARNING

acceleration request overrides emergency braking if the accelerator paddle is depressed with AEB on.

- Due to system limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or interventions while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.
- Due to system limitations, the driver assistance system may not be able to accurately detect or respond to sudden situations in the surroundings. The driver must stay alert at all times and be ready to intervene or take control of the vehicle (for example, by decelerating, braking, or steering) when necessary. Failure to observe precautions above could result in an accident or personal injuries.

Driving Assist*

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

- Adaptive cruise control (ACC), an extension of traditional cruise control, uses sensors on a front mmWave radar or front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to maintain the set cruise speed or time-base following distance. When there are no vehicles ahead, the vehicle maintains the set target cruise speed. If a vehicle is detected ahead, ACC adjusts the vehicle speed according to the set following distance.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the buttons on the steering wheel. See "ACC Activation Methods" for details.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control, and your active steering wheel manipulation remains necessary for ensuring the correct traveling direction of the vehicle.

Function Status

- ACC on: If the conditions for ACC activation are met, the driver can activate ACC using the steering wheel button. If the conditions are not met and the driver attempts to activate ACC, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.
- ACC activated: The system can maintain the set cruise speed or automatically adjust the distance to the vehicle ahead. Pressing the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides ACC control, which will resume once the pedal is released.
- ACC failure: ACC is not available. If the driver attempts activation, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current ignition cycle.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current power cycle. The last set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.
Active		Indicator on	ACC is active. The cruise speed set is displayed in the indicator icon.
Unable to be activated/faulty		Indicator on	ACC is not available because it cannot be activated or is faulty.

Activation conditions

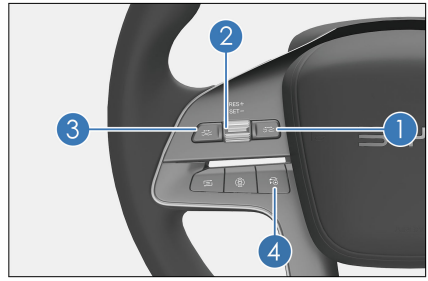
- EPB is not engaged.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is on.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 150 km/h.
- If the vehicle is stationary (zero speed) and the brake pedal is pressed or AVH is engaged, ACC can be activated.
- If the vehicle is moving (speed greater than 0) and the brake pedal is not pressed, ACC can be activated.
- The AEB function is not activated.

CAUTION

- The ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.

Activation methods

- During the current power cycle, the first activation of ACC can only be done using button ④. If ACC has been activated in a current power cycle, pushing rocker switch ② up can also activate ACC.



- When activating the function via button ④, the system sets the current speed as the target cruise speed (if the current speed is below 30 km/h, it will be set to 30 km/h). When activating via rocker switch ②, the target cruise speed is set to the last value before exiting the function.

WARNING

- The system cannot automatically adjust speed to road and driving conditions. You are supposed to set target speed as per local traffic laws and regulations and respond

WARNING

to changes in a timely manner to ensure driving safety.

Setting the target cruise speed

- When ACC is activated, you can set the target cruise speed between 30–150 km/h by moving rocker switch ② up or down. Briefly pushing rocker switch ② up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 5 km/h each time, whereas holding it up/down increases/decreases the speed by 1 km/h successively.

WARNING

- ACC cannot immediately slow down the vehicle to the desired speed. Never be over-reliant on the system.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Setting following distance

- Buttons ① and ③ increases and decreases the time-based following distance. At each setting level, the faster the speed, the longer the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4 in sequence, The default level is 3.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain a safe distance to follow and speed up, slow down, brake, and start the vehicle accordingly.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle ahead is highlighted in blue. The following distance is fixed but varies with vehicle speed and the chosen following distance level. See "Setting following distance".
- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables your vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a short time, ACC resumes following automatically when the lead vehicle starts moving.
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a long time, depress the accelerator pedal or move rocker switch ② upward to start the vehicle.
  - If the stop is excessively long, ACC exits and EPB is engaged. In that case, you will have to release EPB and depress the brake pedal to reactivate ACC.

ACC Accelerates the Vehicle

- The acceleration rate of the ACC is linked to the selected driving mode.
  - In Sport Mode, the vehicle provides faster acceleration.

- In Normal Mode, the vehicle provides moderate acceleration.
- In Economic Mode, the vehicle provides smooth acceleration.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffic.
- ACC may not correctly recognize the target if the front vehicle or pedestrian is too close.
- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended traveling speed or direction. You must stay focus and take control of the vehicle in a timely and correct manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a correct and safe distance from the front vehicle. You are responsible for determining and keeping the safe following distance.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Adjusting speed with ACC active

- Enable or disable this function in the infotainment touchscreen→ ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Adjust Cruise Speed by Accelerator** and the function is off by default.
- You can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal, which overrides ACC braking.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal increases current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal raises the target cruise speed.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed exceeds the target cruise speed, the target cruise speed will be reset to the real-time speed when the pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is greater than 80 km/h, the setting value of cruise speed will not be updated when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h and the real-time speed is over 80 km/h after acceleration, the cruise speed is set to 80 km/h when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruising speed is less than 80 km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is less than 80 km/h, set the cruising speed to the current real-time speed when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If rocker switch ② is pulled down while accelerating, the current speed will be reset as the target cruise speed.

Exiting ACC

- When ICC is disabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing button ④ or the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving. When the vehicle is stationary,

ACC can only be deactivated by pressing button ④.

- When ICC is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving.

Inside overtaking prevention (also applicable to ICC)

- This feature works only when the vehicle is running above 90 km/h with ACC active.
- Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Inside Overtaking Prevention** and the function is off by default.
- After being switched on, this feature slows the vehicle down to prevent overtaking if it is on a slow lane but faster than the vehicle on the adjacent fast lane.

Speed adjustment on curve (also applicable to ICC)

- This feature works only with ACC active.
- Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Speed Adjustment on Curve** and the function is off by default.
- With this feature switched on and ACC active, the vehicle decelerates as appropriate for the curvature before entering a curve for driving safety and comfort.

System limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
  - The mmWave radars and cameras are installed in the front of the vehicle. Blockage of its detection area can compromise the intended function. In particular, if the sensor is covered completely, ACC exits and informs the driver on the instrument cluster. System functionality will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The front mmWave radar may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
  - Performance of front mmWave radar sensors and cameras may be affected by vibration or collision. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the ACC vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may

be out of ACC sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.

WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even when ACC is properly set, the driver must be able to stop the vehicle at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires the driver to beware of the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on (see "Safety Assist" for details).
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision

WARNING

prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- The vehicle may not be able to detour around front targets that risk colliding with it, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle is excessive.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

- ACC cannot be activated in tow, snow, mud, sand, terrain, and other special driving modes.
- ACC and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to improper operations):
    - Vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h.
    - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
    - Tire pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
    - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent system/hill hold system/ traction control system activated,

colliding with or being collided by another vehicle, ignition off.

- The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.

- Environment factors (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):
  - Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare
  - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
  - Mountain roads and rural roads
  - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections.
  - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
  - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails
  - Presence of curbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles
- Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
  - Congested intersections
  - Pedestrians and vehicles weaving through the intersection
  - Sudden appearance of pedestrians, cyclists, and animals previously in the blind spot
  - Sudden braking of the vehicle ahead
  - Adjacent large vehicle merging into the vehicle's lane
  - Pedestrians or other vehicles cutting in line, jaywalking or road-hogging, merging in from a sharp angle, or traveling in the wrong way
  - Stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo
  - Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle with any door open or things falling off
- Other issues
  - Include but are not limited to other situations listed under general system limitations.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- The ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.
- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep

CAUTION

a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.
- In some cases, such as when the preceding vehicle is moving too slowly, when your vehicle changes lanes too quickly, or when the distance from the preceding vehicle is too short, the system may not have sufficient time to reduce the speed or issue timely warnings. In such cases, the driver must respond appropriately and promptly.
- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot identify all the obstacles, so the driver must be alert to the front obstacles or other traffic participants.
- If a vehicle in an adjacent lane is too close to your lane, the ACC system, when activated, may respond and apply the brakes.
- Vehicles coming into your ACC vehicle's route and within its camera detection range will be identified and reacted to as targets, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).

CAUTION

- When the vehicle stops as it follows a vehicle ahead, in rare cases, the system does not recognize the end of the vehicle ahead (for example, the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis or a rear bumper). This means a suitable following distance cannot be kept and you must stay alert and ready to brake at any time.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Because speed limit recognition could be misled by road conditions, always monitor the speed limit of the current road to ensure compliance with traffic laws.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the front camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted an system error.

WARNING

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety and must always mind surrounding traffic.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*

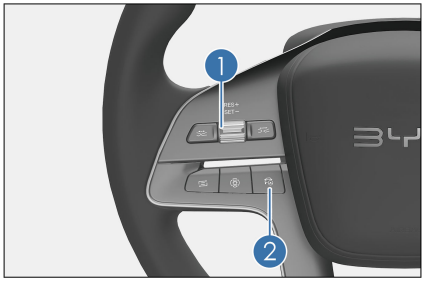
- Intelligent cruise control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between 0 and 130 km/h. It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions. When using ICC, the driver must control the driving route, keep both hands on the steering wheel, and be ready to take manual control whenever necessary.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, you must be prepared to take immediate corrective actions to ensure safe driving. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. If the driver's hands remain off the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

ICC indicators

Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
	Indicator on	ICC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating
	Indicator on	ICC unavailable due to fault

Activating ICC

- ICC is available for activation when  displays on the instrument.
  - Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- Press button ② to activate ICC. If the activation conditions are not met (for example, no lane markings are detected), ACC will be activated first. Once the conditions are met, ICC will switch on automatically.



- displays on the instrument cluster when ICC is successfully activated. The target speed will be shown in 80 MAX.

Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centered in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruise, following, and the adjustment of target speed and time-based following distance.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards, so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In situations such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.

Exiting ICC

- Press the button ② or brake pedal to exit if the vehicle is moving.
- Press the button ② to exit if the vehicle is stationary.

Hands on steering wheel alert*

- If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.
- After the third-level disengagement alert is triggered, the vehicle will automatically exit ICC, decelerate to a stop within the lane, and activate the hazard warning lights.
- The following actions can interrupt the automatic stop:
  - Turning off the hazard lights or activating a turn signal
  - Pressing the accelerator pedal while turning the steering wheel
  - Canceling ICC using the steering wheel control button
  - Shifting to Park
- In a single power-on cycle, the ICC function will be disabled after three times of triggering the driver motion out of the level 3 alarm, and the function can be activated normally after the power-up and power-down again.

CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned and centered in lane, and no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail at intersections. Try activating ICC after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately upon ICC activation. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.
- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in backlight, glare, strong light, on snow-covered roads or roads with heavily worn lane markings.
- Do not use the ICC on winding roads, icy or slippery curves, or under poor weather conditions such as dense fog, heavy rain, or snow, which may obstruct the forward camera's view.
- Speed limit recognition could be misled by map updates, vehicle connectivity, and road conditions. The driver must always observe current road speed limits to ensure complies with traffic regulations.

WARNING

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*

- When the traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects that the speed limit is inconsistent with the ACC target cruise speed, you are required to confirm whether to cruise at the speed limit. Press the SET- or RES + button on the steering wheel to adjust the target cruise speed to the speed limit value.
- When the system detects traffic signs such as roundabouts or intersections, it will prompt the driver whether to adjust the ACC target cruise speed accordingly.
- If the speed limit forecast function is active and the upcoming speed limit differs from the current ACC target cruise speed, the system will prompt the driver to adjust the target cruise speed according to the upcoming speed limit. Pressing the SET− or RES+ button will adjust the target cruise speed to the upcoming speed limit. (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).
- The system's operating speed range is 30–150 km/h.

Function settings

- ISLC setting: infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
  - The function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
  - When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.

- With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

CAUTION

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, the precautions of ACC and TSR must be followed when using ISLC.

Forward Safety Assist*

Front Collision Warning (FCW)*

- Forward collision warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar or cameras to detect vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists in front. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts audibly and visually to reduce or avoid the risk of collision.

Forward collision warning includes three subfunctions:

- Safe distance warning:
  - At 65–150 km/h, the system monitors the environment ahead in real-time. The safe distance warning is triggered if a short following distance is detected to have been kept for a long time.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a message is displayed to alert the driver.
- Pre-warning:
  - At 15-150 km/h, pre-warning is given in response to a risk of collision with the target ahead. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.
  - The system gives a pre-warning visually and audibly. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, and a textual prompt is displayed to suggest the driver braking.
- Emergency warning:
  - If the vehicle runs at about 15–150 km/h, if the driver does not respond appropriately after the pre-warning and the collision risk increases, the system issues an emergency warning. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.
  - This emergency warning is given in the form of an indicator and a textual braking prompt on the instrument cluster, a beep, and a brief braking reminder.

WARNING

- FCW is an assistance feature and its warning timing may be affected by many factors, including vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, and system latency. As a result, warnings may be delayed, missed, or triggered falsely. FCW can not replace your judgment and operation.

Function settings

- You can set the FCW function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The settings are defined as follows:
  - OFF: FCW is disabled.
  - Late: allows FCW to issue later-timed warnings.
  - Moderate: allows FCW to issue moderate-timed warnings.
  - Early: allows FCW to issue early-timed warnings.

REMINDER

- The factory default setting is moderate.

System limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or riders
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the your path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes
  - Animals
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles
- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle runs under poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle is operating in poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - The hood or trunk is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is in motion.
  - The driver presses the brake pedal.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - ESC is disabled or the ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, or decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected due to special clothing or occlusion.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, motorcycle, or an unusually shaped vehicle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.

- Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.

- FCW may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates, or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. FCW is not a replacement for your judgment and vehicle control under any circumstances.
- If FCW gives an alarm, brake based on traffic conditions to slow down or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, a collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. FCW may not issue warnings due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.

WARNING

- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary warnings in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger wrong warnings.
- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars* and cameras in any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot guarantee a warning in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- When the radar or front camera is covered with dirt or foreign objects, a corresponding message

REMINDER

will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, remove the obstructions as instructed as contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. FCW is disabled while the sensor is dirty or covered and will resume after clearing.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)*

- At around 10–20 km/h, the front cross traffic alert (FCTA) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system issues a warning to alert the driver.
- During a warning event, the system alerts the driver through an audible beep from the buzzer, radar-side rendering on the instrument cluster, flashing of the instrument cluster indicators and front-row ambient lights, and flashing warning lights on the side mirrors.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- By default, the system is switched on when the vehicle is started.

System limitations

- FCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - The target is outside the sensor detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The hood is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The steering wheel is turned sharply or rapidly.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The driver press and release the brake pedal.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning, a false warning, or a delayed warning.

- When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may issue warnings as appropriate.
- Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, blocked, or loosely installed, or come off.
- Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
- The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
- The target vehicle is obscured.
- The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
- The vehicle operates in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
- MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
- The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

- Vibration or collision may affect sensor calibration, impairing system performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- FCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTA operations may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Front Cross Traffic Brake (FCTB)*

- When the vehicle is traveling below 20 km/h, the front cross traffic brake (FCTB) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system applies automatic braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- You will be informed of the braking through a message and an animation of radar waves on the instrument cluster, indicating the side where a potential collision may occur.

WARNING

- FCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification.
- Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

REMINDER

- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- By default, the system is switched on when the vehicle is started.

System limitations

- FCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- FCTB may not brake or disengage during a braking in certain conditions, including but not limited to the following:
  - The target is outside the sensor detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The hood is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The steering wheel is turned sharply or rapidly.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The driver press and release the brake pedal.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no braking, a false braking, or a delayed braking.
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not brake as appropriate.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, blocked, or loosely installed, or come off.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.

- The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
- The target vehicle is obscured.
- The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
- The vehicle operates in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
- MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
- The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- The vehicle is heavily loaded.
- Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

- Vibration or collision may affect sensor calibration, impairing system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, FCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- FCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTB to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTB operations may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)*

- The automatic emergency braking (AEB) system uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists ahead. The system is triggered to help avoid collision or reduce the impact if possible serious collisions are detected.
- At about 4-150 km/h, the AEB system monitors the road ahead in real time and automatically applies braking if a collision risk with a vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclists is detected.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator and a prompt message "Emergency braking", and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions

WARNING

but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.

- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. AEB can not replace your judgment and operation.

Function settings

- Enable or disable AEB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

WARNING

- Disabling AEB is strongly discouraged, because this would prevent system assistance in reducing vehicle speed and avoiding/mitigating collisions.

REMINDER

- AEB is enabled by factory default and remains on by default after each restart.

System limitations

- AEB is only activated when the speed exceeds 4 km/h. This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance under all circumstances. Always drive with caution.
- Targets that may not be responded to include, but are not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or riders
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes
  - Animals
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles
- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle is operating in poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - The road conditions are poor due to pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - The hood or trunk is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - Rapid acceleration
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - ESC is disabled or the ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.

- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- AEB may be unable to properly respond to complex traffic, including but not limited to the following circumstances:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, motorcycle, or an unusually shaped vehicle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- System performance may be reduced in some cases, including but not limited to the following:
  - The front bumper is strongly impacted from accidents or other causes.
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or braking system malfunction
  - Tires are improperly inflated or worn out.
  - Unqualified tires are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - A small spare tire or tire repair kit is used.
  - Heavy loads
  - Break-in period
- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- AEB cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing or snow mode.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. AEB is not a replacement for your judgment and vehicle control under any circumstances.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. AEB may not brake due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.

WARNING

- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.
- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary braking in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger unnecessary braking.
- Do not attempt to test AEB with cartons, metal plates, dummies, or other objects, as the system may not function properly and thus causing accidents.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- During an emergency warning, the system will not activate AEB if the driver has already taken evasive action, such as steering, accelerating, or braking firmly.

REMINDER

- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- When the radar or front camera is contaminated or covered, a message will appear on the instrument cluster. In this case, clean the sensor surface as instructed, as contamination or obstruction may cause sensor blindness. When the sensor is dirty or covered, AEB is disabled. After clearing, it resumes normal operation.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*

- The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects speed limit signs using cameras and illuminates the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster to maintain an appropriate speed.

Function overview

- TSR contains: Speed limit information function (SLIF), road sign information (RSI)*, speed limit forecast (SLF)*, and intelligent speed assistance (ISA).
  - Speed limit information function (SLIF): detects speed limit information by using cameras or map* data and lights up the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster.
  - Road sign information (RSI)*: detects road sign information by using cameras or map* data and lights up the road sign indicator on the instrument cluster.
  - Speed limit forecast (SLF)*: uses highway and urban expressway map*

data to obtain the speed limit of the road ahead and displays a speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster to preview the upcoming limit and the distance to it.

- Intelligent speed assistance (ISA): alerts against speeding with a speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster or a audible alarm, when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected limit.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled by default.
- When TSR is off, TSR and all subfunctions are disabled.
- When TSR is on, SLIF and RSI* are enabled, while SLF* and ISA can be switched on or off according to needs.
- Speed limit forecast (SLF)*: switches this feature on or off.
- Audible alert for speed limit change: enables/disables audible alerts when the speed limit changes are detected.
- Intelligent speed assistance (ISA): enables/disables visual and/or audible alerts when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit.
- Audible speed limit warning (SLW): The audible alert when the vehicle exceeds the speed limit can be quickly enabled or disabled from the status bar at the top of the infotainment touchscreen.

REMINDER

- Map* data is updated regularly to ensure system performance.
- The TSR system identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not involves in the active control of the vehicle. Please drive responsibly.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for processing.
- If TSR malfunctions and becomes unavailable, have the system repaired immediately.

System limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- Speed limit sign detection is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to TSR failure or performance degradation include but are not limited to:
  - The front windscreen is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - The speed limit signs are unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked, or covered.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Weight or width limit signs are not in standard size as per national regulations.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the

dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- TSR cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only an assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting the TSR function. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Speed limit signs are unclear.
  - Speed limit signs are incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front cameras or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The driver assistance system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).

CAUTION

- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Side Safety Assist*

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)*

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its lane, LDA issues an alert or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.
- Lane departure assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP). The system's operating speed range is 65–150 km/h.
- Lane departure warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.
- Lane departure prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle

back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Lane Departure Assist**.
- All LDA functions are enabled by factory default and remains on by default after each restart.
- The LDA alert mode is set to steering wheel vibration by factory default and can be changed to Sound, Vibration, or Sound + Vibration. The setting before the last time the ignition is switched off is retained.
- LDA default sensitivity level is set as "Moderate". In case of fatigue driving, the system automatically switches to "High". Restarting the vehicle restores sensitivity to "Moderate".
- OFF: no LDA functions active.
- Reminder: turns on LDW only, which does not implement steering intervention.
- Correction: only LDP enabled, steering intervention applied.
- The system restores the default settings when the vehicle is started.

REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings, LDA will be suppressed.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door, the hood, or the trunk is open or faulty.
- The camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If not, have the system repaired in a timely manner.
- While LDP is activated, the driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, otherwise the system will audibly prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel.
- When LDA fails, is displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert and a prompt message. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The detection of land markings is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - There is glare from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.

- The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- Lane markings are obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight.
- Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
- Lane markings are confusing or unclear (for example, when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction).
- Lane markings change rapidly, for example when lanes split, cross, or merge.
- Lane lines that are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt or snow
- Lanes may be narrow, change in number, have sudden changes in lane markings (such as on ramps or exits), or feature complex lane arrangements.
- The vehicle is operating on slopes or winding roads where it travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures the lane markings.

- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Road conditions are poor such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed is excessive or insufficient.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test LDA functions intentionally.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control.
- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle if the function is suppressed or deactivated. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Lane lines are incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the cameras

CAUTION

or late function activation include but are not limited to:

- Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked;
- The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
- LDW and LDP cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing and snow mode.

- LDA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The driver assistance system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from the current roadway or lane and there is a collision risk with a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane or with oncoming traffic in the opposite lane, emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) assists in steering correction to help avoid or mitigate a potential collision.
- ELKA detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detect vehicles in adjacent lanes with mmWave radars. If the vehicle is detected to unintentionally drift out of its lane, or be at risk of doing so, and is likely to collide with a detected target, corrective steering input of ELKA keeps the vehicle in its lane. This helps prevent unintentional lane departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming traffic or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Function settings

- Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Emergency Lane Keeping Assist**.
  - ELKA is enabled by factory default and remains on by default after each restart.
  - OFF: ELKA will not operate.
  - On: ELKA is active.

REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present (subject to the actual vehicle configuration).
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation* from the road or side collision but corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.

REMINDER

- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for processing.
- ELKA is unavailable in the event of malfunctions, which is indicated by solid on the instrument cluster. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles is sensitive to the environment. Situations that may lead to no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or reduced performance of the system include but are not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - There is glare from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Lane markings are obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight.
  - Road boundaries are unidentifiable due to grass, soil, curbs and so on.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Lane markings are confusing or unclear (for example, when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction).
  - Lane markings change rapidly, for example when lanes split, cross, or merge.
  - Lane lines that are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt or snow
  - Lanes may be narrow, change in number, have sudden changes in lane markings (such as on ramps or exits), or feature complex lane arrangements.
  - The vehicle is operating on slopes or winding roads where it travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures the lane markings.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in a delayed action. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the radar or camera detection area.
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area in front of or beside the vehicle at close range.
  - Fences, traffic barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles are present in the front-side or rear-side of the vehicle that the system may fail to detect.
  - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front-side or rear-side areas.
  - Obstacles in the front-side or rear-side areas have low contrast against the surrounding environment.
  - Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.

- Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas are located on a curve.
- Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Road conditions are poor such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed is excessive or insufficient.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
  - The system operation may be affected by cracked windshields within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windshield, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not test the ELKA function intentionally.
- The ELKA function only assists in correcting the vehicle back to its original lane when there is a risk of collision due to vehicle departure from the road* or lane departure, instead of keeping it centered. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - There are pedestrians, animals, or specialty or specially-shaped vehicles.
  - Lane lines are unclear or incomplete.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late warnings include, but are not limited to:
  - Cameras are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - Camera lens are partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.

CAUTION

- The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- ELKA cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.

- ELKA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.
  - The driver assistance system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Door Open Warning (DOW)*

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system issues a warning to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.
- The blind spot detection (BSD) system uses sensors such as radars to detect targets such as vehicles or cyclists in the driver's blind spot. When the vehicle is traveling at about 15–150 km/h, the side mirror indicator flashes if BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turn signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator on the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an audible alarm given (optional) to warn the driver of a possible collision.



REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects onto the side mirror glass. Doing so may affect BSD functionality.
- Ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode*, BSD does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side BSD radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.

- BSD and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - The vehicle is driving on sharp curves.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h.
  - The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.
- The system is starting up during vehicle power-on or reboot.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- Glare, reflections, and other poor lighting settings where misidentification is possible. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. Always change lanes in a safe manner.
- BSD is not a replacement for the rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Door Open Warning (DOW)*

- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety. The function is enabled by default.
- The door open warning (DOW) system detects targets on both sides of the vehicle, such as vehicles and cyclists, using sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power on or moving slowly at a speed below 2 km/h, the alarm indicator on the side mirror illuminates when DOW detects a collision risk during door opening. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated. If an occupant opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes and an audio alert sounds, reminding the occupant of the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects onto the side mirror glass. Doing so may affect DOW functionality.
- Ensure the normal operation of the DOW system, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions should be removed promptly.
- In towing mode, DOW does not work.

REMINDER

- Influence of vibration or collision on the side mmWave radars can degrade DOW performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- DOW and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
  - A large vehicle behind blocks the radar detection area.
  - There are small targets or slow-moving targets.
  - The target is moving fast or turning, such as changing lanes to the rear of your vehicle, or suddenly entering the detection area behind your vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to misdetect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual checks. Visually checking the surroundings before opening a door is the most effective safety measure and the responsibility of all occupants.
- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning, but cannot avoid the collision accident.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an

WARNING

accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Safety Assist*

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)*

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward.
- When the vehicle is traveling below 150 km/h, the rear collision warning (RCW) system monitors the rear driving environment in real time using sensors such as radars and cameras. The system issues a warning when a rear-end collision risk is detected.
- During warning, the interior ambient lights and the front left/right ambient lights on the corresponding side illuminate steadily, and the rear area of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted in red. The hazard warning lights are also activated to alert following drivers.
- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. RCW cannot replace your judgment and operation.
- Ensure the normal operation of RCW, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode*, RCW does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the rear mmWave radars can degrade RCW performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- RCW only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. RCW does not operate while the vehicle is reversing.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).

- The driver brakes hard.
- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Large vehicles behind block the radar or camera detection area.
  - The rear area is obstructed, or the obstacles have low contrast against the front environment, resulting in incomplete, inaccurate, or unclear detection.
  - The vehicle or the rear target is on a curve.
  - Targets behind can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area behind the vehicle at close range.
  - The vehicle is reversing.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- Glare, reflections, and other poor lighting settings where misidentification is possible. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace your judgment and operation. Do not be over-reliant on the RCW system. RCW cannot replace your judgment and operation.
- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, you should take immediate measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.
- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)*

- When the vehicle is reversing, the rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) system detects moving vehicles in the rear blind spot and issues a warning when

it detects a potential collision risk with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. The RCTA operating speed range is 0–15 km/h.

- This warning is provided through an audible alert, voice notifications, an animation of radar waves indicating the side of possible collision, target rendering on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- By default, the system is switched on when the vehicle is started.

System limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle operates in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, cyclist, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target

ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.

- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.

- In towing mode*, RCTA does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB)*

- The rear cross traffic brake (RCTB) system warns the driver and assists with braking when the vehicle is reversing out of a vertical or angled parking space and there is a collision risk with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. This helps avoid collisions with traffic crossing behind the vehicle, particularly when the driver's view is blocked by neighboring parked vehicles. The RCTB operating speed range is 0–10 km/h.
- You will be informed of the braking through a message and an animation of radar waves on the instrument cluster, indicating the side where a potential collision may occur.

WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tire status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards.

Function settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- By default, the system is switched on when the vehicle is started.

System limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - System initialization is in progress.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or timing, which may result in no braking or a delayed braking. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle operates in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, cyclist, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode*, RCTB does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the mmWave radars can degrade system performance. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.
- RCTB cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.

WARNING

- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated

WARNING

with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

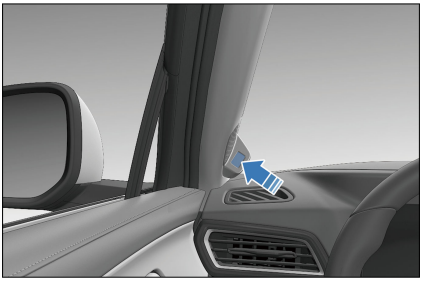
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

The Driver Monitoring System (DMS), including fatigue and distraction monitoring, is designed to monitor the driver's driving status with a camera and assess it. Based on the assessment, the system alerts the driver in a timely manner. The monitoring data will not be saved or uploaded to the server but instead will be deleted immediately after the assessment is complete.

How to Use

- The camera for DMS is mounted on the A-pillar of the driver side. Make sure it is unobstructed before use, or DMS may not function normally.



- To enable or disable fatigue driving warning or distraction driving warning (both enabled by factory default), go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive**/ **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**. By default, the system is switched on each time when the vehicle is powered on.
- When the system sounds a fatigue driving warning, pressing the scroll button on the steering wheel pauses the warning for 15 minutes, during which no warnings will be given. The function will recover after 15 minutes.

Fatigue driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, driver fatigue warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of fatigue, such as closing eyes, blinking and yawning, it alerts the driver through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

Distraction driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, distraction driving warning enabled, when the system detects signs of distraction, such as not looking at the road ahead, it alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

REMINDER

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.

Precautions

- The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. Make sure to drive safely, observe surrounding traffic conditions, and obey local laws and regulations regarding driving.
- The proper functioning and accuracy of the driver monitoring assistance can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - Driver monitoring assistance is disabled.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
  - Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognize.
  - The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses.
  - The driver wears a mask or something that covers the face.
  - The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

WARNING

- The driver should pull over as soon as possible when feeling tired.

Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

- The direct Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is an auxiliary system that monitors tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- You can navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the button on the steering wheel and to the tire pressure display screen by pressing the button again.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 80% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tire is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow. It is recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, please

contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, check whether the tire pressure meets the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injury can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tire. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-BYD approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tires* or tire rotations. Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

System Function

The acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is traveling at low speed.

- When driving forward:

- The alert volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0 km/h to 20 km/h.
- The alert volume decreases with vehicle speed in the range of 20 km/h to 30 km/h.
- At speeds above 30 km/h, the broadcast sound stops automatically.

- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced prompt sound when moving in reverse.

Disabling/Enabling the System

- To turn on or off* the engine sound simulator, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen (not supported in some regions).

WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch* can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the vehicle approaching, decreasing vehicle safety.
- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h in Drive and check whether an audio prompt can be heard from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound,

WARNING

contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

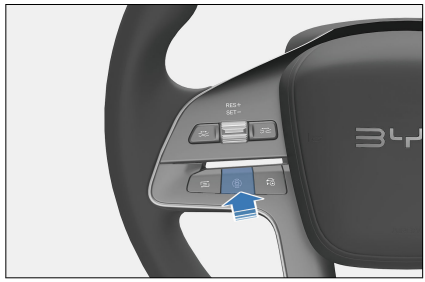
Around View Monitor (AVM)-Configuration 1

The around view monitor (AVM) system, also known as the 360-degree imaging system, provides real-time image (bird's-eye view) by seamlessly stitching images from four wide-angle cameras installed at the front, rear, left, and right sides of the vehicle. This helps the driver understand the surrounding blind spots including areas close to the ground.

AVM Access

Engaging manually

- To access the AVM screen, press the AVM button on the steering wheel.
- Shift into Reverse and the AVM screen is automatically displayed to show the rear view.
- You can also tap → **Vehicle Image** on infotainment touchscreen to access the AVM screen.



Triggered in Drive*

- After the infotainment system is powered on, the AVM will be automatically activated when the

vehicle switches from Park to Drive for the first time.

Triggered by radars

- AVM is automatically activated when the radars detect obstacles around the vehicle.

Triggered by turn signal*

- You can enable or disable the turn signal trigger function via Sidebar → **Trigger Settings** → **Low-speed steering linkage**.
- When the vehicle is in Drive with a speed of 15 km/h or slower, turning on the turn signal starts the AVM. If the speed is 30 km/h or higher, the AVM function turns off automatically.

AVM Operation

AVM Icon	Name
	AVM settings
	Parking radar
	Dual view
	Floating window

Switching perspectives

- Tap the front/back/right/left areas of the vehicle model to switch the displayed perspective.
- In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a wide-angle full-screen view.



Switching views

- Tap the to switch between 2D dual and 2D single views.

Radar display

- Tap the radar icon to enable or disable the radar display in the AVM screen. The system detects the obstacle's distance from the vehicle. and alerts the driver to their proximity via an image on the infotainment touchscreen and an audible alarm*.

Transparent around view

- Tap the vehicle model to switch between transparent and solid vehicle views. When the vehicle speed is 30 km/h or higher, the transparent around view automatically turns off.
- During each power cycle, the image before last power-off is displayed for the initial transparent around view. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to move and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.

AVM settings

- Tap on the sidebar to enter the AVM setting screen where you can set triggering ways or restore default settings.

WARNING

- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the AVM system. When using the AVM system for parking/driving, ensure that all doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the AVM screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed on the front bumper, on the lower parts of the side mirrors, and above the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent impairing camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.

WARNING

- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the AVM start button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the AVM screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- The AVM system provides transparent AVM view to show the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in observation of area below the vehicle during parking/driving. Investigation of foreign objects underneath the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in other manners to ensure the safety of occupants and the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is moving slowly, the transparent around view feature is affected by speed changes or multiple stops, causing misalignment between the images below the vehicle and those outside.

Around View Monitor (AVM)-Configuration 2

- Around View Monitor(AVM) activation method:
  - To access the panoramic view, press the button on the steering wheel.
  - Alternatively, tap the vehicle view App on the infotainment touchscreen to enter the around view.

- Shift into Reverse and the AVM screen is automatically displayed.



- On the bottom of the infotainment touchscreen, tap the icon for front, rear, right, or left view. View of the selected area is displayed in the image section.
  - In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a 180° perspective displayed in full screen.
  - Tap the radar icon in the AVM system to enable the radar display, and tap it again to disable. When the radar display is enabled, a warning is displayed as the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.
- Transparent body view: Tap the transparent body view button to switch between transparent and non-transparent vehicle images.
  - After the vehicle starts, the image before last power-off is displayed on the transparent panoramic view screen. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to run and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.

WARNING

- The panoramic view system provides transparent panoramic view to show the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in the observation of area below the vehicle during parking/driving. Investigation of foreign objects below the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in any other manner to ensure the safety of personnel and the vehicle.
- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The panoramic view system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the panoramic view system; and when the panoramic view system is used for parking/driving, ensure that all the car doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the panoramic view screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front bumper, the lower parts

WARNING

of the side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.

- To prevent affecting camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the panoramic view start button or shift into reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the panoramic view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent panoramic view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

Parking Assistance

- During vehicle parking, the parking assist system detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of obstacles by an image on the infotainment touchscreen and a speaker alarm.
- The parking assist system helps with reversing. Pay attention to the environment behind and around the vehicle during reversing.
- When you reverse the vehicle, a reversing image will be displayed on the infotainment touchscreen automatically.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

WARNING

- When the vehicle speed is over 10 km/h, the parking assist system will cease to operate.
- Do not place any articles within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.
- When no camera is available, a "No video signal detected" message is displayed.

Parking Radar Switch

- To turn the parking sensors on or off, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Parking Assist**.
- When the ignition is switched on and the gear is shifted to Reverse, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.
- When the parking assist system is enabled, the vehicle is not in Park, and the EPB and AVH are released, the obstacle detection mode of the parking assist system is enabled. When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

① Front left corner sensor*

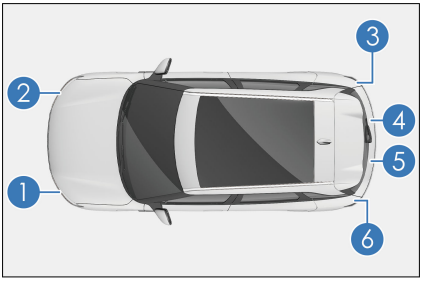
② Front right corner sensor*

③ Rear right corner sensor

④ Rear right middle sensor

⑤ Rear left middle sensor

⑥ Rear left corner sensor



Distance Display and Speaker

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

Working example of center sensors

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 700 to 1,200		Slow
About 400 to 700		Fast
About 200 to 400		Continuous

Working example of corner sensors

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 400 to 600		Fast
About 200 to 400		Continuous

CAUTION

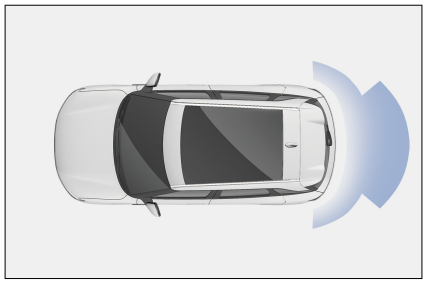
- 0~200mm is the blind spot range of the system. For the poor detection accuracy and inaccurate alarm information, the alarm prompts in 0~200mm are for reference only.

Working Sensors and Detection Range

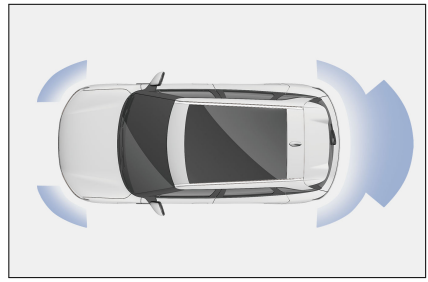
All sensors are activated upon reversing.

The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so drivers must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.

Configuration 1



Configuration 2



REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgment. Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.
- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the reversing radar system * is indicated by a message on the instrument

REMINDER

cluster and a beep, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible in the event of the error message.

Sensor Detection Information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
  - The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
  - The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
  - The vehicle is fitted with non-original, lower suspension.
- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners
  - Low obstacles
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle
  - Any object under the bumper
  - Any object close to the vehicle
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic braking system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, and ABS/ESC functionality.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands and improves vehicle stability, comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle dynamics control (VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while driving, if the vehicle swerves from the driver's normal lane, the VDC will correct the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction control system (TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easier for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill hold control (HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

When the brake pedal is pressed quickly, HBA recognizes that the vehicle is in emergency mode and actively improves the brake pressure. This allows ABS to intervene more quickly, effectively shortening the brake distance.

Controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP)

When you engage the EPB, the CDP function starts working so that the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (0.4 g if EPB is engaged but the brake pedal is not pressed, and 0.8 g if EPB is engaged and the brake pedal is pressed) until the vehicle stops. The function stops working when the EPB is released.

Hill descent control (HDC)

- Working principle: HDC is a value-added function of the ESC system to improve vehicle comfort, The main function of HDC is to assist in downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.
- To enable or disable HDC:
  - When the speed is below 38 km/h, you can also enable HDC by pressing the HDC switch. When the function is enabled, its status indicator on the instrument cluster is steady on.
  - Press the HDC switch again to disable the function, and the indicator on the instrument cluster turns off. HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC speed control:

- HDC works at speeds between 11 km/h and 38 km/h, within which you can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.

- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special conditions, such as at a long stretch of downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily unavailable due to high brake temperature.

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
  - You can set Comfort or Sport pedal feel on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Drive** / **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**→ **Brake Assist Mode**.
- Comfort stop
  - Comfort parking: When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, the intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, providing a smooth stop feeling for the driver.
  - Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Drive** / **Vehicle** → **Driving Control**.
  - After the function is triggered, the braking distance may increase by 2—5 cm. Increase the distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.
- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on, the intelligent power braking system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

ESC operation instructions

- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels, where the system should be turned off to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off the ESC system, press the physical button or go to the infotainment system. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If the ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC is working, it completes the active intervention control this time rather than executes the "OFF" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.

- Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h. ESC may be re-enabled only if the ESC is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.

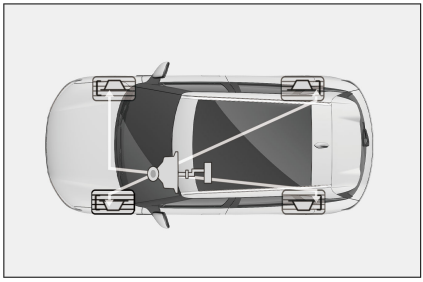
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation*
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting ESC after the motor is powered off
  - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the motor will automatically restart ESC system.
- ESC start and speed linkage
  - Although already turned off, the ESC system can start on its own if the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h.
- With ESC system activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- With ESC system disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Multi-collision braking (MCB)*

- If an accident requires airbags activation, the vehicle engages automatic braking.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems (ESC and ABS), assists the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard and brake lights also light up to alert oncoming traffic and prevent further collisions.
- To support emergency service rescue and vehicle recovery, brakes will release and brake lights will go off after the accident.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking at any time by accelerating or braking.

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits. Each circuit runs diagonally through the vehicle (the left front wheel brake is connected to the right rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- ABS helps maintain steering control by preventing the wheels from locking or skidding when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the ABS is working, the ESC indicator will flash and the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly, which is normal. In this situation, you should press and hold the brake pedal instead of pumping the brakes. This allows ABS to function as designed. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
  - Bumpy roads.

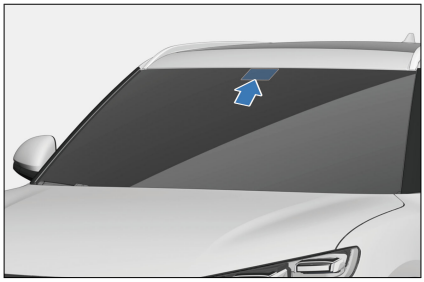
CAUTION

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (such as waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

Other Main Functions

Dashcam*

- The camera is located in the upper middle of the front windshield.



CAUTION

- See ***P195*** for requirements for the TF card and instructions for inserting the card.
- Details of functional features and the disclaimer can be found in the Dashcam app.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, the details of the dashcam function vary between vehicles.
- You are responsible for complying with all laws and regulations regarding the use of cameras in your country or region, in particular those about privacy protection.
- When driving, the dashcam will record the surroundings. To protect your privacy, recorded videos are stored in the in-vehicle memory card and BYD does not collect or process your videos.

Real Time Image

- To enable or disable Dashcam, go to the infotainment touchscreen → **Dashcam**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- The dashcam has three operation interfaces: "Real time image", "Playback list" and "Settings", for you to consult and set the driving information.

Control icons

: starts recording

: stops recording

: takes a picture

: locks the video being recorded, or starts emergency recording

Operation conditions

: normal recording status

: faults happen on dashcam

: TF card recognized, but recording does not start

: TF card not recognized (card is not inserted or fails)

Playback list screen:

- The playback list includes "Driving video", "Lock the video", and "Image".

Settings:

- Tap **Video recording length selection** to select the recording length. The recording length can be 1min, 2min or 5min.
- Tap **Driving info. on recording view** to record driving information in video.

- Tap **Delete data** to clear all data in the general video file folder of the dashcam.
- Tap **Format** to reformat SD card. This action clears all data and formats the card to FAT32.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System..... 176
A/C System..... 187
BYD App*..... 191
Storage..... 192
Other Devices..... 194

Infotainment System

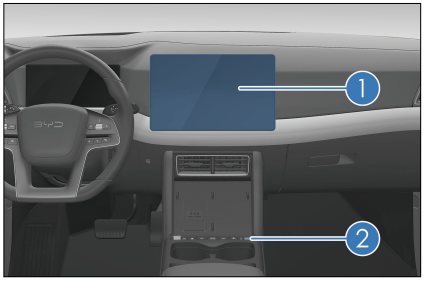
Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

When the infotainment system is started for the first time, a warning message will appear. Tap **Agree** to enter the system.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Scroll button



- Scroll up to turn volume up or down to turn volume down.
- With the infotainment system on, press the scroll button to mute the system and go to the screen saver interface or turn off the screen (set in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio & Display** → **Screen**). Press the scroll button again to unmute and turn on the screen.
- Press and hold the scroll button for three seconds to restart the infotainment system.

Factory reset

- The infotainment system can be reset to the factory settings.
  - Configuration 1: ⊞ → ◉ → **System** → **Reset options**.
  - Configuration 2: ⚙ → **System** → **Version**→ **Factory Reset**→ **Reset**.
- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove fingers from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are

CAUTION

wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.

- Touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.

- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.
- To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.
- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in the event of a failure.

Infotainment System Screen

- When the infotainment system is started for the first time, a warning message will appear. Tap **Agree** to enter the system.
- After the system starts, the home screen is displayed automatically. The home screen consists of status bar, navigation bar, and desktop widgets.
- Top status bar:

  The top status bar displays various status icons.

  These icons fall into two categories: interactive icons* that can be tapped to perform specific functions and status-only icons that display related information.
- Shortcut menu:

  Swipe down from the top of the touchscreen to open the shortcut menu. The shortcut menu includes modules for quick operations, brightness and volume adjustments.
- Navigation bar:

  Press and hold the navigation bar to open the control menu and applications*. You can customize the navigation bar according to your preferences.

  - : returns to the previous screen or exits the program.
  - : returns to the homepage.

    Tap and hold this button to switch between wallpaper and map desktops views, depending on your preference.
  - : goes to the vehicle setting screen.
  - : goes to the application list screen*.
- Task management center*:

  Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen opens the task management center.
- Desktop widget*:

  The default desktop layout displays pre-installed widgets. You can add, remove, or reposition widgets based on your preferences. Some widgets are fixed and cannot be replaced.

REMINDER

- The availability of applications depends on the vehicle's actual configuration.

Settings*

The settings include the following modules: Bluetooth, Network & internet,

Notifications, Profiles & Accounts, Location, Privacy, Accessibility, Security, Apps, Assistant & Voice, System, and Google Account.

- Bluetooth: manages Bluetooth device pairing and connections, supporting wireless audio transmission and peripheral control.
- Network & internet: configure Wi-Fi, mobile network, VPN, and hotspot sharing to optimize network connectivity.
- Notifications: customize notification priority, display style, and Do Not Disturb mode for individual apps.
- Profiles & accounts: sync or remove account data, and manage cross-device sign-ins and cloud service permissions.
- Location: control app location permissions and view recent location access history.
- Privacy: manage app permissions, ad preferences, and access records for sensitive data such as the camera and microphone.
- Accessibility: enable assistive features such as screen readers, captions, and magnification to support special accessibility needs.
- Security: set profile lock types, enable Google Play Protect, and manage emergency security responses.
- Apps: view app storage usage, permission status, and default app settings.
- Assistant & voice: Adjust Google Assistant wake words, voice match, and smart home integration.
- System: perform system update, backup and restore operations, multi-device connectivity, and system-level power-saving strategies.
- Google Account: manage account-linked Google services such as Search, Maps, and Ads.

Trademark statement

- Google, Android, Google Play, and Google Maps are trademarks of Google LLC.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: opens applications, selects functions, clicks icons on the touchscreen, or types characters.
- Dragging: touching and dragging an icon, thumbnail, or preview to the target position to change its location.
- Swiping: operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: zooms in or displays the image in full-screen mode. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/Pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management center.
- Sliding from the left/right of the touchscreen: returns to the last screen.

OTA Upgrade*

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. You can get the latest version of vehicle software on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Configuration 1: → → **System** → **System update**.
  - Configuration 2: → **System** → **Version**.
- When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update immediately when the new version is available or schedule an update based on your vehicle usage.

CAUTION

- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely in Park gear with network connection successfully established.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the on-board diagnostics port before or during the update.
- During the OTA upgrade, all functions are not available except the unlocking/locking, interior lights, hazard warning light, and window controls.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, try it again. If it continues to fails, contact the official customer service or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, and the fault warning lights such as

CAUTION

the parking system fault warning light, ABS fault warning light and ESC fault warning light are on at the same time, Do not drive the vehicle and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to check the vehicle status.

REMINDER

- Upgrade paths may vary from the actual ones on the infotainment touchscreen and App. The actual paths shall prevail.
- Some functions may change after OTA update. Check the latest version number for update descriptions.

BYD Assistant

BYD Assistant*

- BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/ radio making phone calls, and controlling in-vehicle devices.
- When BYD Assistant is set as the default voice assistant, you can activate it by saying the wake word "Hi, BYD", by briefly pressing the voice button on the steering wheel, or by tapping on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Your voice commands can be recognized after system wake-up. Then you can give voice commands such as "Go home" (set a quick location first), "Play music", "Make a call (requires access to the contact list

and connection to the phone via Bluetooth)", "Set the temperature to 23 degrees". Once a command is recognized, the system executes the corresponding action.

- If BYD Assistant is not set as the default voice assistant, wake words and the steering wheel button cannot be used to activate it. In this case, you can either long-press the voice icon or navigate to **Application** → → **Assistant & voice** → **Digital assistant app** → **Default digital assistant app** to select the preferred default assistant.

Google Assistant*

The vehicle is equipped with Google Assistant, which uses natural language processing technology to allow intuitive and convenient control. It supports various entertainment interactions such as music and podcasts.

- When Google Assistant is set as the default voice assistant, you can activate it in three ways:
  - By saying the wake words "Hey Google".
  - By briefly pressing the steering wheel voice button.
  - By tapping the Google Assistant app icon.
- You can ask Google Assistant general questions, such as "What's on my calendar?", or interact with it to access communication, media, navigation, and vehicle control functions, such as "Read my messages", "Play some music", "Navigate home", or "Turn on the heater". Once a command is recognized, the system executes the corresponding action.
- If Google Assistant is not set as the default voice assistant, wake words and the steering wheel button cannot be used to activate it. In this case, you can either long-press the voice icon or navigate to **Application** → → **Assistant & voice** → **Digital assistant app** → **Default digital assistant app** to select the preferred default assistant.

Bluetooth Call

Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Please connect Bluetooth** to establish connection.
2. Tap **Scan for device** to search for available devices.
3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth Call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, and **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Tap to zoom in or out the dialing screen.
- Tap to display or hide the dial keypad.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

File Management

New folder

- Go to file management screen to create new folders. You can enter the folder name, and tap **OK** or **Cancel** to perform actions.
- Tap the top of the file management screen to change file sources.

Search

- Tap **Search** on the upper left corner and enter file names to search for target files.

Cut/Copy

- Touch and hold any file, select target files and operation (Copy, Move and Delete), and then go to the edit status.

Rename

- Touch and hold any file, select **Rename** in dialog displayed, rename the selected file, and then tap **OK**.

Delete

- Touch and hold any file, select files, and then tap **Delete**.

Sort

- Files are sorted by name by default. You can also sort them by size, type, or time.

Attributes

- Touch and hold any file, select a file, and then tap **Details** to check its attributes.

Phone Projection*

Phone projection* allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process is to be completed on the phone or the infotainment touchscreen: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- Wired connections require a connection between a certified USB cable to the USB data transfer port on the vehicle.
- When connecting wirelessly, pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. It is better to keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on in this process.
- For the connection to be stable, it is better to change the vehicle hotspot name to avoid name-related issues.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.

Apple CarPlay

Connecting with a cable*

- **To activate the connection,** plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected. The phone projected is shown on the device list.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the iPhone USB cable to stop Apple CarPlay. If you have chosen to enable wireless CarPlay, the phone and the vehicle pair automatically to allow for future wireless connections.

Connecting wirelessly*

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

  1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.

- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Connect the Bluetooth of the current device.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this CarPlay device.
  - Turn off your phone Wi-Fi.

REMINDER

- Note that stopping the current connection will not have other CarPlay devices connected automatically.

Reconnecting

- Disconnected wired Apple CarPlay will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Apple CarPlay, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Apple CarPlay and built-in infotainment system

- To exit the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the BYD icon on Apple CarPlay's home screen.
- To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the built-in infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Apple CarPlay history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection.
- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Apple CarPlay icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- Access the list by tapping the connected device icon on the shortcut menu or by selecting the following settings in the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Configuration 1: → → **Bluetooth** or **Network & internet**.

- Configuration 2: → **System** → **Connection**.

- Switching using the connected device list supports wireless devices only. This means you get a prompt if selecting another wireless device, but you will need to unplug and replug the USB cable to switch to a wired device.
- If the phone is in wireless screen-mirroring mode, connecting its USB port only supports charging and will not trigger the switching prompt. but connecting that of another phone will.

Possible issues

- **Checking your phone**
  - Use a phone that is in proper conditions. Apple CarPlay may often freeze on older iPhone models or earlier iOS versions.
  - A smooth cellular network is necessary. Sluggish network connections could cause apps to lag.
  - Apple CarPlay may disconnect by signal interference in a complex network environment.
- **Checking connections with the vehicle**
  - For wired connections, be sure to use the data transfer port, and preferably a MFi-certified or genuine iPhone cable.
  - For wireless connections, verify your phone settings:
    - Bluetooth has been turned on.
    - Wi-Fi has been turned on and Auto-Join of the vehicle hotspot toggled on.
    - Wireless Carplay has been selected at the very first Apple CarPlay connection. In case you do not know, navigate on your iPhone to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. Delete your iPhone from the device list on the vehicle. Then reset Apple CarPlay.
- In the event of MFi authentication chip issue or reading error, delete histories and reconnect. If the issue persist, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The name of the vehicle's Bluetooth or hotspot must be unique.
  - Search on your phone for nearby Bluetooth and hotspots. Make sure that no other devices have the same name as the vehicle to prevent interference.
  - You can change the device name on the infotainment touchscreen.

    Configuration 1: → → **Bluetooth** or **Network & internet**.

    Configuration 2: → **System** → **Connection**.
- Make sure Siri is on.
- Make sure Apple CarPlay is not restricted.

  If your iPhone is not detected by Apple CarPlay, navigate on the phone to **Settings** → **Screen Time** → **Content & Privacy Restrictions**. If **Content & Privacy Restrictions** is on, tap **Allowed Apps & Features** to make sure that Apple CarPlay is enabled.
- If Apple CarPlay is disconnected by turning the vehicle hotspot off, wireless reconnection cannot be performed within 10 minutes. Try after that.
- You can restart by forgetting history settings:

On your iPhone, navigate to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. In the meantime, delete this phone from the vehicle's device list.

- If the wireless connection fails after you end a wired connection by unplugging the USB cable, clear CarPlay device information on your iPhone or restart the phone.

- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay.

Android Auto

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** plug an Android Auto-compatible phone to one of the vehicle's USB data transfer ports with a certified USB cable and set up as prompted.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the USB cable or. Alternatively, you can end the connection or delete the projected phone in **Connected Devices**.

1. Plug a smartphone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.

- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Turning Bluetooth on the vehicle or Wi-Fi on the phone off may stop projection.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this Android Auto device.

Reconnecting

- Disconnected wired Android Auto will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Android Auto, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system

- To exit from Android Auto, tap on Android Auto interface.
- To go back to Android Auto, tap the Android Auto icon on the built-in infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Android Auto history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection. Connection prompts will be given if projection conditions are not met.

- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Android Auto icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- You can switch between wireless Android Auto devices in the connected device list and get a switching prompt after selecting another device.
- However, this step does not work for switching to a wired device, which requires unplugging and replugging the USB cable.
- If the phone is in wireless screen-mirroring mode, connecting its USB port only supports charging and will not trigger the switching prompt. but connecting that of another phone will.

Possible issues

- **Android Auto not working**
  - Make sure your phone supports Google service.
  - Check if the phone operation system supports Android Auto.
    - Common Android Auto compatible devices are Android phones running Android 11.0 or later versions. Consult your phone maker for compatibility.
    - Android Auto is not supported on phones running Android (Go edition).
  - Verify that your phones has the latest version of Android Auto app.
    - Search for Android Auto in phone Settings, then go to the Android Auto screen to view the version.
    - If Android Auto cannot be found, search for it in Google Play to download or update.
  - Check if the connection between your phone and the vehicle is working normally.
    - For wired connections, use a good USB cable to connect the phone and the data transfer port.
    - For wireless connections, make sure Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are enabled on your phone and so do the vehicle Bluetooth and hotspot.
- **Unable to reconnect Android Auto**

  Try the following steps:
  - If you are using a wired connection, change to a genuine USB cable of the phone.
  - For a wireless connection, change the vehicle hotspot name (→ **System** → **Link**) or turn off the Bluetooth and Wi-Fi on the phone and the vehicle, then turn them back on.
  - Restart your phone and the vehicle infotainment system.
  - Delete and reconnect your phone as follows:
    1. Forget previously connected devices on the phone: Go to your Android phone's settings, then navigate to or search for Android Auto settings (on Google phones for example, **Settings** → **Connected devices** → **Connection preferences** → **Android Auto**).
    2. Tap **Previously connected cars**, then the three-dot menu button, and select **Forget all cars**.
    3. On the vehicle infotainment touchscreen, go to → **System** → **Link** → **WLAN**, then delete the device you want to project from the **Connected Devices**.

4. Delete your phone from **Bluetooth Settings**.

5. Reactivate the connection between the phone and the vehicle.

- **Causes to unstable Android Auto connections**
  - For wired Android Auto, typical causes are:
    - Unstable data transmission due to low-quality USB cable
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the vehicle
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the phone
    - Unstable connections due to BC1.2 incompatibility of the vehicle USB port
    - Unstable connections due to an old version of Android Auto on the phone
    - Strong vehicle vibration caused by rugged roads
  - For wireless Android Auto, they include:
    - Hotspot turned off on the vehicle or Wi-Fi off on the phone
    - complex network environments or weak signals (for example, vehicle hotspot having to compete for frequency resources if various Wi-Fi creators are working concurrently)
    - Bad cellular reception (in a basement or forest, for example)
    - Too old version of Android Auto on the phone (the latest version recommend)
    - Multiple BYD vehicles nearby with identical hotspot names
    - Faulty or malfunctioning Bluetooth or Wi-Fi module on the phone or the vehicle
- **Apps not available on Android Auto**
  - Not all apps on your phone are compatible with Android Auto, so some of them may not be displayed on the user interface.
  - Mobile network influences app presence or usage on Android Auto. Some apps cannot be opened without mobile network connections.
  - Given the feature or permission differences of apps between Android Auto and the phone, please consult the app providers if you have questions on app usage.

REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.
- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.
- Android Auto connections require the use of Bluetooth on both your phone and the vehicle, which could disconnect other already connected Bluetooth devices.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of Wi-Fi on your phone, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on your phone.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of vehicle hotspot, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on the vehicle. If Wi-Fi remains needed,

REMINDER

turn on Wi-Fi again and try to reconnect it. (Performance may vary across systems.)

- For Android Auto compatibility, visit Google website: http://www.android.com/auto/

Trademark statement

- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.



A/C Operation Interface

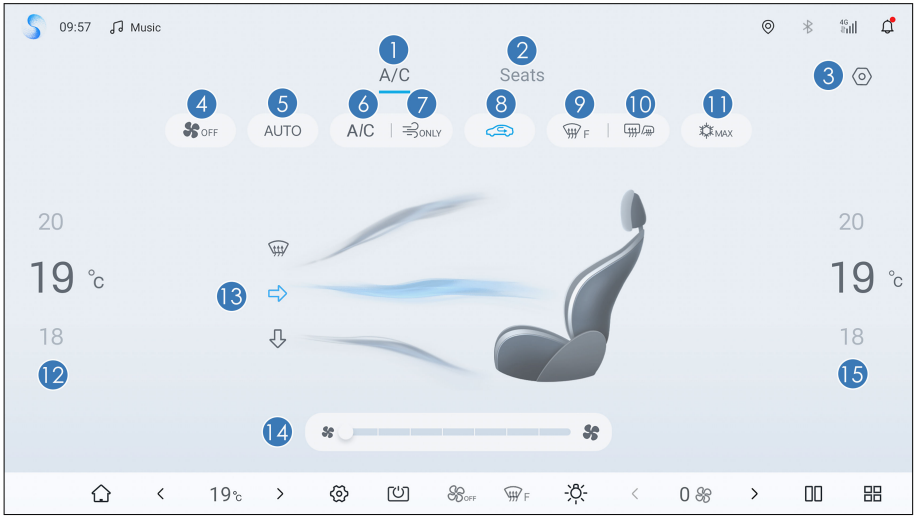
Front A/C Operation Interface

A/C System

A/C Panel

Front A/C Panel

- Front windshield defroster



1 A/C operation interface

9 Front windshield defroster

2 Seat Operation Interface*

3 A/C setting

4 A/C ON/OFF

5 Auto mode

6 A/C button

7 Ventilator

8 Circulation mode

10 Defroster for rear windshield and side mirrors*

11 Max cooling

12 Driver's temperature control

13 Air distribution

14 Fan speed control

15 Front passenger's temperature control

Function Definition

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Auto mode

- Tap the auto button, and its indicator lights up on the front A/C panel. The auto mode is activated with the fan speed and air distribution being adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

A/C button (cooling/heating button)

- Tap this button to turn on the A/C (cooling/heating). The icon lights up and cooling or heating begins. Tap this button again to turn off the A/C compressor. The icon goes out and the compressor stops working.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The compressor is turned on, the temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level. Tap this button again to deactivate A/C ventilation control and enter AUTO mode.

Front windshield defroster

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster for rear window & side mirrors*

- Tap this button, the electric heating elements inside the rear window and side mirrors will make the window and mirrors clear. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button a second time to disable the function.
- This function is not to be used to dry raindrops or melt snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.
- When cleaning the inside of the rear windshield, do not scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

Ventilator

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air, and the fan speed is 1 by default without cooling or heating.
- Tap this button again to exit.

Temperature controls

- Tap the upside arrow or slide it down to increase the temperature. Tap the downside arrow or slide it up to lower the temperature.
- "Lo"/"Hi" is displayed when the temperature is set to the lowest/ highest value.

Fan speed control

Tap the suitable blower speed level button to set the blower speed at a desired level. A higher blower speed level indicates a higher air volume.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button. is displayed, and the circulation mode is recirculation.
- Tap this button for the second time. is displayed, and the circulation mode is fresh air mode.

Blowing mode

- A/C blowing mode
  - Tap the corresponding icon on the infotainment system to select the corresponding blowing mode.
  - You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three).
- Adjustments can be made according to the air supply illustration.

: Air flows to the face level.

: Air flows to the foot level.

: Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.

Intelligent A/C ON Method

Remote A/C ON with smart key

- You can turn on the A/C through the remote control key to gain a comfortable interior environment in advance.

Turning on A/C by voice

- Control the A/C settings by pressing the voice button on the steering wheel or by saying "Hi, BYD".

Switching on A/C with Cloud Service

- You can turn on the A/C remotely through the BYD App to gain a comfortable interior environment in advance.

Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.

- If the A/C performance does not meet expectations, it is recommended to activate the AUTO mode. In this mode, the system automatically adjusts the temperature, air distribution, and fan speed to maintain passenger comfort.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked by, for example, leaves or snow.
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button (turning on the compressor), which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from the outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

REMINDER

- A/C odor:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp or musty smell just after the A/C is turned on. This is because, during A/C operation, condensation tends to accumulate on the evaporator, which can easily absorb unfiltered substances such as body sweat and smoke inside the vehicle. The moisture on the evaporator surface provides a favorable environment for bacterial growth, which may lead to unpleasant odors over time.
- How to prevent A/C odors:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the filter regularly.
  - Keep the cabin clean and fresh.
- If the odor does not reduce after the above operations, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- To reduce A/C odors, if the A/C was on before the vehicle was powered off and locked, the A/C blower may automatically run for a while after locking. This is a normal condition designed to dry the condensation on the evaporator surface and prevent mold growth that can cause odors.

A/C Settings

To access the A/C setting interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen→ **A/C**.

- A/C Auto Mode

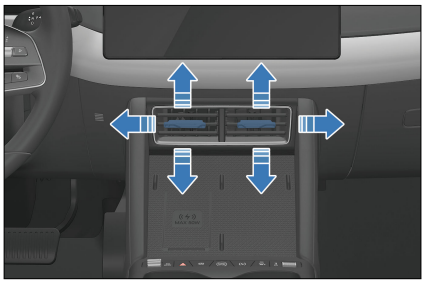
- Two options are available: ECO and Comfort.

- Remote A/C Schedule
  - Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.
- Auto Internal Circulation upon Parking*
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.
- Auto Internal Circulation in Tunnel*
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it
- Auto Fan Speed Reduction During Bluetooth Calls
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.

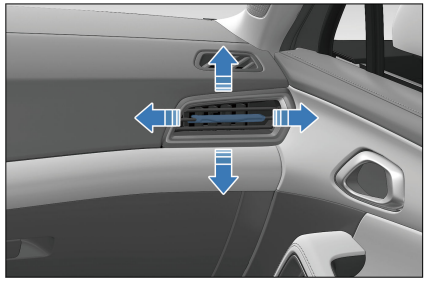
Vents

- Toggle the slat up or down to adjust the outlet angle of air flow.
- Slide the slat left or right to adjust the outlet angle of air flow or open/close the vent.

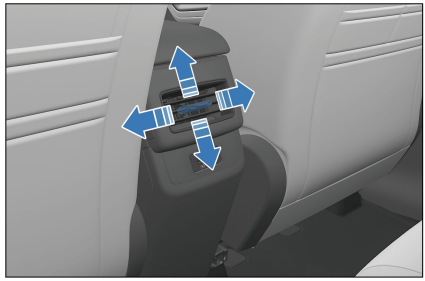
Front Center Vent



Front Side Vents



Rear vents



BYD App*

About BYD App*

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- You can search for "BYD" in application markets such as Google Play and App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration*

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, and then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.

2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap **Send email** to receive verification code, and then enter the code in app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control*

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

- The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tire pressure.
- Tap lock, unlock, light flashing & honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
- Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to perform other settings.
- At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
- If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Center and Vehicle Management*

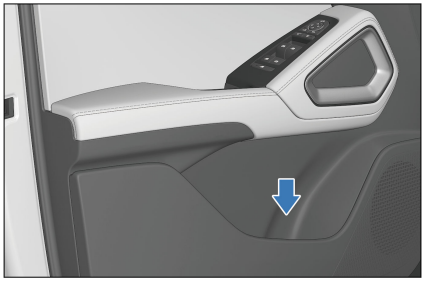
In BYD App screen, tap My Account to go to the individual center.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- Account and Security: recovers or changes your password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- About Us: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Storage

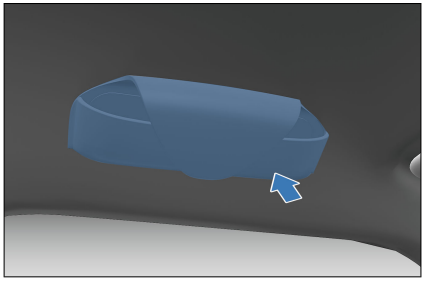
Door Bins

- There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



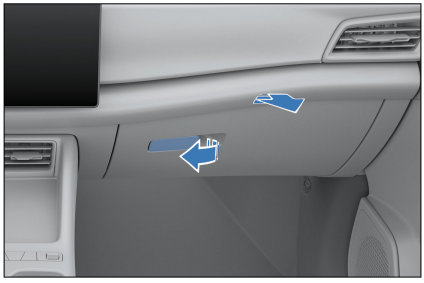
Eyeglass Case

- The magnetic glasses case is located above the driver's seat.



Glove Box

- Tap the lid to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.

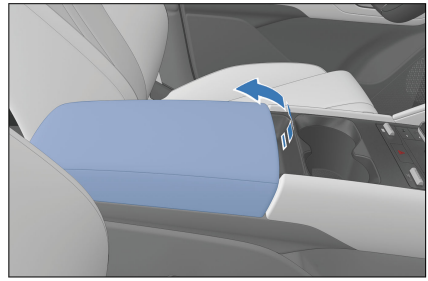


REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

Center Console Cubby

- Pull up the lid of the center console cubby in the direction shown in the illustration to open it.
- Snap down the lid to close it.

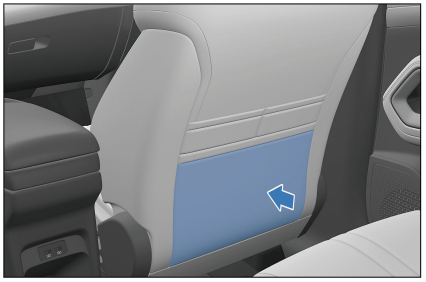


REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the center console cubby closed while driving.

Seatback Pockets

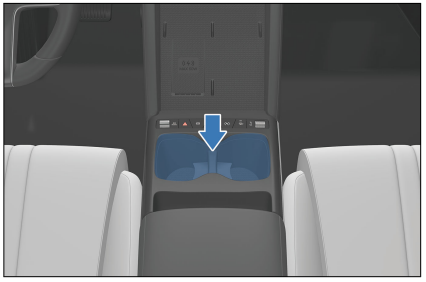
- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



Cup Holder

Front Cup Holder

- The front cup holder is located inside the centre console cubby.

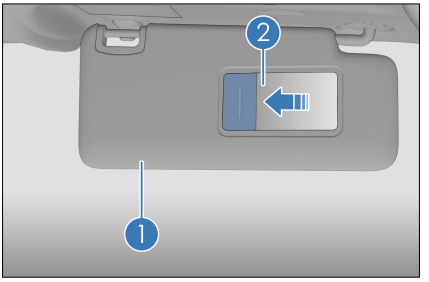


Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

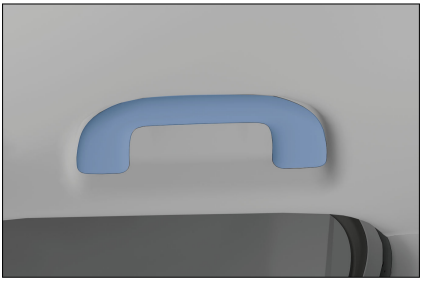
- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.



CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

USB Ports

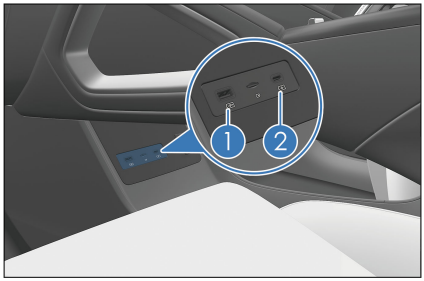
Front-Row USB Ports

- There are two ports installed in the lower layer of the auxiliary dashboard.

① USB data port

② Type-C charge port (charging only)

- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.



- The infotainment system is compatible with USB storage devices up to 128GB. It is not compatible with some USB devices on the market.

CAUTION

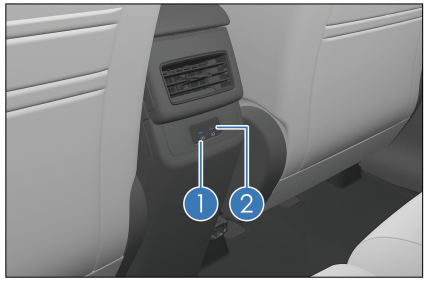
- It is recommended to use USB storage devices up to 128GB with FAT32 format.
- Do not use substandard or special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

Rear-Row USB Ports

- The rear USB ports are located behind the center console cubby.

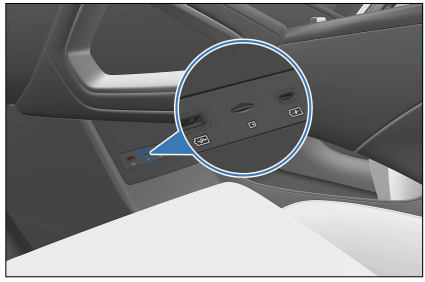
①② Type-C charge port

- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.



SD Card Slot

- The lower layer of the auxiliary dashboard is equipped with a dedicated SD card slot.
- The infotainment system supports TF card (also called Micro-SD card) ranging from 32 to 128GB with a Class 10 speed rating or higher and FAT32 format.



CAUTION

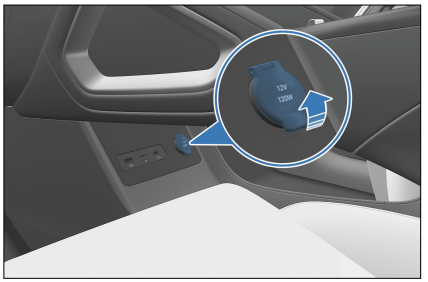
- Insert the card correctly.
- When the card is inserted, a red flashing dot on the driving recorder's interface* indicates successful recognition and normal operation. Any issue with card recognition or video recording prompts corresponding notifications on the infotainment touchscreen.

CAUTION

- Incompatible TF cards may result in failure to write and save files.
- It is recommended to use a USB storage device with a partition format of FAT32 and a memory of 32G.
- Format non-FAT32 cards before using them, or the system may fail to recocogize them.
- Before removing the TF card, stop recording or shut down the infotainment system, or video files may be damaged.

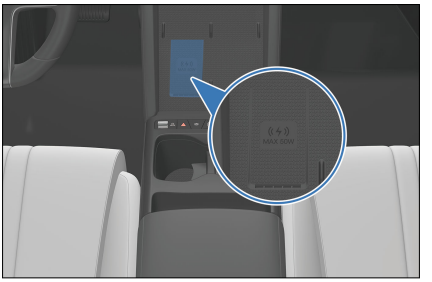
12 V Auxiliary Power

- The standby power supply can be used for accessories with a working current of less than 10 A and electrical power of less than 120 W.
- The 12 V auxiliary power supplies power to vehicle accessories.
- The 12 V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition is on. Lift the cover to use it.



Wireless Phone Charger*

- The mobile phone wireless charging area is located on the center console. To activate/deactivate wireless charging, tap the wireless charging icon on the shortcut page after sliding down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After starting the vehicle, put the phone in the wireless charging area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen.



- Wireless phone charging uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to a phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- To use the vehicle wireless charger, your phone must have wireless charging function.
- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal (for example, the metal phone case) in the wireless charger area together with the phone.

CAUTION

- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger during charging, remove the mobile phone immediately and wait for the metal item to cool down before removing to prevent burning.
- While charging, align the bottom of the phone with the vents of the wireless charging area to ensure a better charging experience.
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area. The wireless charger will malfunction if water enters the wireless charger.
- Do not use flammable solvents such as oil, grease, or alcohol to clean the wireless charging area.

CAUTION

- Do not cover the wireless charging area with fabrics or objects while charging.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils (for example, magnetic charging coils). Please use with caution.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as NFC cards and bank cards, do not place them between the wireless charging area and the phone during charging.
- Before charging, placing an NFC-enabled phone on the NFC-integrated wireless charging area may activate the phone's digital wallet.
- When the ignition is switched on, activating the digital key will pause the phone's wireless charging. The wireless charging automatically resumes when activation is finished.

REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charging may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module.

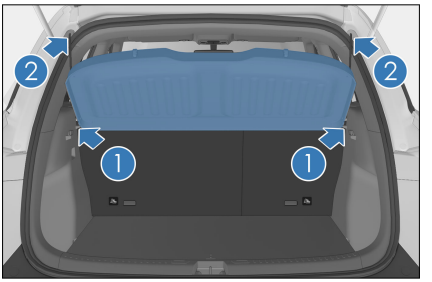
REMINDER

If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.

- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and a front door is opened, the message "Please take your cell phone with you" is on the instrument cluster.
- The setting icon for wireless phone charging can be added or removed on the shortcut page of the infotainment touchscreen.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging* module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone's manufacturer.
- The wireless fast charging* power of your phone depends on that supported by the phone, while the in-vehicle fast charging* only supports up to 50 W.
- Some phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging*.

Cargo Cover*

- The cargo cover is used for privacy and direct sunlight protection.
- Snap the two grooved sides of the cargo cover into the lower C-pillar shield bosses on both sides, and then attach the cover drawstring.
- Do the reverse to remove the cover.



WARNING

- When installing the cargo cover, make sure that it is installed securely.
- Do not place any objects on the cargo cover.
- Never allow a child to climb onto the cargo cover, otherwise, damage to the cargo cover, or even injury/death to the child, can happen.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information..... 200
Regular Maintenance.....202
Self-Maintenance.....207

Maintenance Information

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum running condition at all times.
- The items in the maintenance schedule are important and need to be maintained according to the time interval.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Schedule Requirements

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, certain maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads.
  - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack
  - Within 8 km, repeated short distances are driven and the outside temperature is below freezing.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

Vehicle maintenance is performed based on the mileages or months, whichever comes first.

Item	Interval
Brake friction block and disc	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
Drive shaft boot	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
Ball pin and boot	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
Tire condition and inflation pressure, incl. TPMS	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km

Item	Interval
Tire wear (check front and rear wheel alignment when tire uneven wear is greater than 2 mm)	Check during maintenance and rotate when necessary. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary
EPS corrosion and foreign materials on or ablation of connectors, including wiring harness GND point	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
Brake fluid	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
Bumps or deformation of the high-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, and explosion-proof valve, and powertrain leaks	Check every 24 months or 30,000 km
A/C filter*	Check it every 24 months or 30,000 km, whichever comes first, and replace it if necessary. In severe driving conditions, check it every six months and replace it if necessary
Drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every six years or 90,000 km
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every 24 months or 30,000 km
Gear oil in the transmission	Replace it at 24 months or 30,000 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 48,000 km afterwards
Note: When checking Item 1, replace chassis parts in a timely manner if any abnormal damage is found.	

CAUTION

- Brake friction pads and discs need to be checked more frequently in severe weather conditions, such as extremely cold regions like Norway, Finland, and Iceland.

REMINDER

- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km, whichever comes first) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.

Severe driving conditions refer to:

- Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air.
- Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
- Driving in cold weather.
- Frequent and sudden braking.
- Frequent use of a towed trailer.
- Use as a taxi.
- Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time.
- Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time.
- Frequent overloading.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods and and is not driven with the load over maximum.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. Under any of the following circumstances, the vehicle may need to be checked or repaired, and it is recommended to send the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odors.
  - Power declines significantly.
  - Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
  - Tire deflates; tires make excessive noises at turns; tire wear is uneven.

- Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
- Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
- Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
- Motor coolant temperature remains high.
- Battery capacity decreases significantly.
- High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injuries.

Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check cabin interior.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fenders.
  - Fenders protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there are no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used

in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.

- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Vehicle Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings and insect carcasses get stuck.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle, enable the washing mode* and ensure all doors, hood, trunk, sunroof*, and access panels are closed.
- Do not open the charge port to clean the interior.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Before washing the vehicle, park it in the shade, and wait for the vehicle to cool down completely.

1. Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
2. Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
3. Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.

4. Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Washing with high-pressure washer

- When using a high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions below:
  - Keep the nozzle at least 30 cm away from the vehicle surface.
  - The recommended pressure is below 60 bar, and it must not exceed 100 bar.
  - Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern (do not use a direct high-pressure jet spray).
  - Keep the nozzle moving continuously; do not concentrate the jet on one spot.
- Follow the above instructions during washing, as failure to do so may result in vehicle or component damage.
- Do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting and even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

REMINDER

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).
- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windshield washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.

REMINDER

- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trims, wash it off with water and inspect for damage. Replace seriously damaged trims in a timely manner, as loose trims may fall from the wheel during driving and cause accidents.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper or lights.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When using an automatic car wash, note that certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinse water, or specific wash programs may scratch the paint surface. Such scratches can reduce the gloss and durability of the paint, especially on dark-colored vehicles. Before washing, consult the service provider or refer to equipment instructions to confirm which washing program is safest for your vehicle's paint.

CAUTION

- Make sure to disable the AVH function before entering an automatic car wash.

CAUTION

- Fold the side mirrors before washing, and unfold them before driving.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor to prevent corrosion.

Carpet

- Clean carpets with a good foam detergent.
- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove as much dust as possible. Several types of foam detergents can be used. Some are in spray cans, and others are powders or liquids that produce foam when mixed with water. Clean the carpets with foam soaked sponge or a brush, scrubbing in a circular motion.
- Do not use plain water, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

Seat Belts

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

CAUTION

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door brakes regularly. If a door brake lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use organic substances (for example, solvents, kerosene, alcohol, and gasoline) or acid or alkali solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.

CAUTION

- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. If there is any spillage, immediately clean it thoroughly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth and air dry it in a cool, ventilated place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, or acid-base solution, as these will cause discoloration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains, and trimmings must always be kept clean.

CAUTION

- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, the temperature inside the vehicle rises easily, so avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the hood, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Checks

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: Check the expansion tank coolant level at each charge.
- Windshield washer fluid: Check the residual amount of washer liquid in the tank monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, check the residual amount more frequently.
- Windshield wiper: Check wiper conditions monthly. Check for wear, cracking, or other damage whenever the wiper cannot clean effectively.
- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal is operating properly.
- EPB switch: Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery: Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system: Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires: Check tire pressure monthly. Check for tread wear and embedded foreign bodies as well.
- Windshield defrosters: Check the defroster vent every month when the heater or the A/C system is used.
- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors: Check whether the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn: Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Combination Lights

Front combination lights

- Front combination lights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle

carries heavy load frequently, front combination lights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the front combination lights aligned by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the combination lights and inside the turn signal on the side mirror, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the combination lights or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.

REMINDER

- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Charge the vehicle on time.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Release the parking brake and set the gearshift lever in parking gear.
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material", such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.

- If possible, start the vehicle regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Hood

Opening and Closing the Hood

Open the hood

1. Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood’ s paint.
2. Pull the handle on the left under the dashboard twice. The hood unlocks and opens slightly.



3. Lift up the hood and support it with the with a stay bar.



Close the hood

1. Remove the stay bar. Lower the hood to about 30 centimeters above the front grille and release it, so that the fall locks it. Do not press the hood with hands to close it.
2. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked. If the hood can still be lifted slightly, it indicates that it is not locked correctly. Open the hood again and then close it correctly according to the above steps.

WARNING

- When closing the hood, confirm that nobody is within the range of the falling hood.
- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly before driving. If the hood is not closed properly, it may suddenly open during driving, resulting in accidents and personal injuries.
  - The correctly closed hood is level with the adjacent vehicle body.
  - If the hood is not closed tightly when driving, stop immediately and close the hood to prevent accidents.

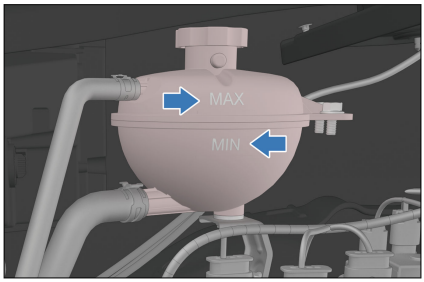
CAUTION

- Do not press the front of the hood. Heavy pressure may damage the hood, causing dents in the surface or bending the edges.
- Do not force down the hood or release it from a high position.

Cooling System

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the Maximum(MAX) and Minimum(MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.

- The coolant must always be of the same specification as the original, without adding any mixture. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.



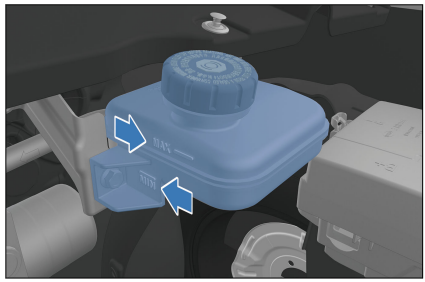
- Refill coolant to the MAX line if the level is below the MIN line. Check the cooling system for leakage.

REMINDER

- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system for they may be incompatible with the coolant or the motor components.
- Before opening the reservoir cap, make sure that the motor, high-voltage electronic control assembly, refrigerant reservoir and radiator are all cooled down. Opening the coolant expansion tank when the motor has not yet fully cooled down may cause coolant to squirt out, resulting in severe burns.

Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.



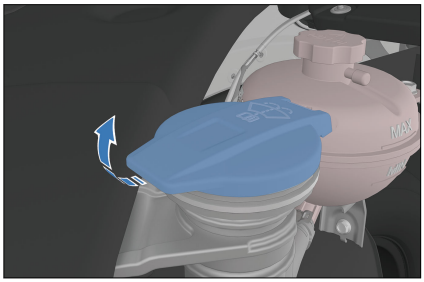
- Effects of high-altitude environments on brake fluid:
  - Atmospheric pressure decreases as altitude increases, which may increase the air content in the brake fluid and cause the brake system malfunction warning light (!) to illuminate. Before driving in high-altitude areas, have the intelligent power braking system properly bled at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If the braking system is not bled before driving in high-altitude areas, the brake pedal may feel soft and braking distance may increase during driving. In severe cases, vehicle power may be limited. Drive with caution.

Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.
- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When you add washer fluid to the fluid reservoir again, use a piece of clean cloth dipped with windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade, which helps keep the blade edge in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution or acid solution into the windshield washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washer fluid.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly.
  - Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface of the A/C system. These deposits hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on once a week for at least 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system. The system can recycle the refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging the refrigerant.

Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.

- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- Do not wax the windshield when washing the vehicle and maintaining the body paint, as the wax layer reflects light in poor light, consequently affecting the sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windscreen wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windshield and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days). When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet. (When there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance must be carried out timely. It is recommended to use windshield repair resin products and replace the windshield if marks are too large or too many.
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive**/**Service** → **Overhaul** to enable wiper check and then the wipers move to the service position.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tires

- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.

WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Inflation

- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.

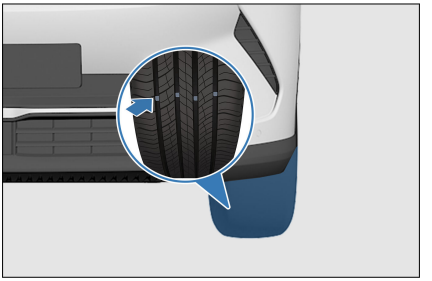
- When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tire pressure should be measured while tires are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tire pressure is measured, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the traveled distance is not more than 1.6 km.
- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3~0.4 bar) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.
- Tubeless tires have a self-sealing function when they are punctured. However, because in fact usually there is a very slow air leak, as soon as the tire begins to depressurize, carefully look for the leak location.

Tire inspection

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the cases happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.
- Tire treads are cast with wear bars. When the tread is even with the wear bar, its thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.



- Tires with exposed wear bars are experiencing serious performance loss and therefore must be replaced.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it needs to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire checks.
- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.

- After installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

Tire Rotation

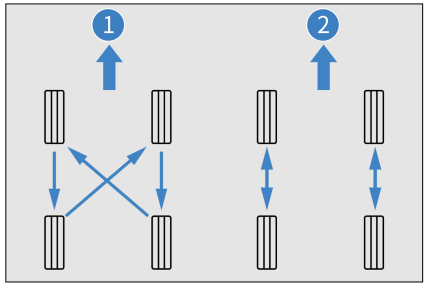
- In order to make tires wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to check the wear of the tire inner and outer tread every 10,000 km and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment as well. Rotate the tires if necessary.
- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire* is used for the vehicle.
- After tire replacement, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.

Directional tires and wheels

- When purchasing replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped in tire rotation.
- Tire rotation is as shown:

① Non-directional tires and wheels

② Directional tires and wheels.



Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- It is recommended to replace with original tires at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- Unsuitable tires affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will severely affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorized dealer or service providers. Please consult a BYD

authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

WARNING

- Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.
  - Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
  - Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading. These fuses are mounted in the under-hood power distribution box (PDB) and the dashboard PDB, respectively.

- The under-hood PDB is located beside the left fender of the engine compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the under-hood fuse box, and turn over it to view the fuse box label.
- The dashboard PDB is located in the shield under the dashboard.
- The anode fuse box is located above the low-voltage battery.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....218

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

- The reflective vest is in the tool kit. In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

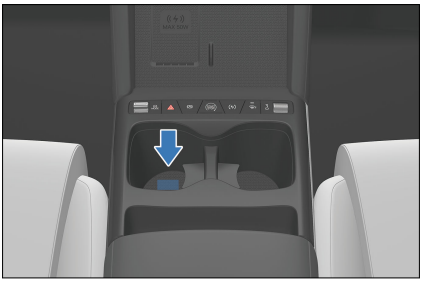
If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Check for nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters that may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

Starting the vehicle when the electronic smart key runs out of battery:

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Hold the smart key close to the designated sensor area at the bottom of the front left cup holder.
3. Press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle.



Emergency Shutdown System

- The emergency shutdown system is activated and the high-voltage system is automatically shut down when the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - The vehicle system is faulty.
- The OK indicator goes off if any of the above situations occurs.
- Activating the emergency shutdown system in the noted types of collision minimizes the risk of injuries or accidents.
- The vehicle system cannot be switched into the OK status once the emergency shutdown system is activated. In that case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help. The system is turned

off immediately even if the ignition is switched on. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible.

If a Collision Occurs

- The vehicle has experienced a collision.

  1. Immediately power off the vehicle, turn on the hazard warning light, evacuate occupants to a safe area, and place a hazard warning sign on the rear of the vehicle in accordance with local codes.

  2. Call the police rescue number according to the actual situation and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- The vehicle collision will activate the emergency shutdown system and the "OK" indicator lights off. In that case, the vehicle will fail to be in a driver-ready state. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- If it is not possible to estimate the extent of damage to the vehicle after a collision, do not get close enough to touch the vehicle to avoid the risk of high voltage shock.
- If the occupant is trapped and needs to be cut into the vehicle for rescue, contact the professional rescuer for cutting and disconnect the high-voltage system before cutting. Cutting schematics can be found on the Rescue Sheet in the documentation that came with the vehicle, or offered by contacting a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Do not carry out maintenance work during charging.

WARNING

- Do not disassemble, move, or alter high-voltage battery components and connecting cables as their connectors can cause serious burns or electric shock and may result in personal injury or death. The orange cables are part of high-voltage wiring harness. Users must not repair the vehicle's high-voltage system by themselves. If any repair is required, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

If the High-Voltage Battery Leaks

After a collision, if there is battery leakage, an acrid smell inside the vehicle, visible acid flow outside the vehicle, or any smoke with the battery pack:

1. Immediately power off the vehicle and evacuate occupants away from the vehicle. It is recommended to call immediately a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for rescue.
2. Disconnect the low-voltage battery wearing a protective mask and anti-corrosion gloves if conditions permit.
3. Carry out a simple inspection, if conditions permit: Check whether any edge of the high-voltage battery tray is cracked and whether any obvious liquid flows out.

   - In case of light leaks, avoid potential sources of fire or flammable materials. Absorb leaks with an absorbent pad, and place the waste in a closed container or burn the waste. Wear anti-corrosion gloves before the operation. In the event of a severe leak, clean up any leaked

fluids and treat them as hazardous waste. Calcium gluconate solution can help treat toxic HF gases.

- If skin comes in contact with leaked fluid, wash it immediately with plenty of water for 10-15 minutes. If there is still any discomfort, apply 2.5% calcium gluconate ointment, or soak in 2% to 2.5% calcium gluconate solution. If the condition does not get better or discomfort persists, seek medical help immediately.

WARNING

- Do not touch any spilled liquid, and stay away from a leaking vehicle or high-voltage battery.
- Do not dispose of the leaked fluid into the water or soil or other environment.
- The vehicle system operates with high-voltage DC power. It generates a lot of heat before and after vehicle start-up and when the vehicle is powered off. Watch out for high pressures and high temperatures.
- The remote control key and high-voltage components of the vehicle may affect and harm people carrying medical devices.

If a Fire Occurs

If the vehicle is on fire, immediately power off the vehicle and evacuate occupants away from the vehicle. Under the premise of ensuring personal safety, the following operations are carried out according to the actual situation:

1. Call the police rescue number according to the actual situation and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
2. If the fire is small and slow, use a dry powder fire extinguisher to put out the fire.
3. If the fire is large and growing quickly, stay away from the vehicle to stand to the wind position, and wait for professional rescue.

CAUTION

- Use fire extinguishers of designated type. Water or incorrect fire extinguishers may cause electric shock.
- In the event of other special conditions that cause flying projectiles (such as interior trims and glass), stay away from the vehicle and promptly ask a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to come to the site for handling.
- If you inhale smoke, seek medical attention immediately.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organization you joined for roadside assistance.

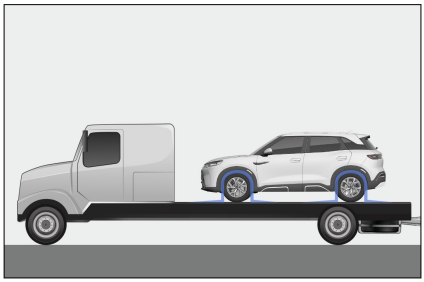
WARNING

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Recommended transporting method:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When

the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



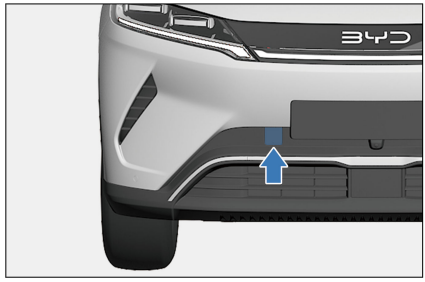
CAUTION

- When moving a vehicle on a flat trailer, make sure that the vehicle being moved is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.
- When fixing the vehicle, do not pass the fixtures such as straps and ropes through the wheels or tie them on the chassis, suspension and other body parts to prevent damaging the vehicle.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilized during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

- The installation point of vehicle tow eye is shown in the illustration.

  1. Pry it open with a cross screwdriver.
  2. Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, it is recommended to call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency situations where the vehicle needs to be towed for rescue, follow the precautions below. If these precautions conflict with applicable regulations, always adhere to applicable regulations to prevent vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions and the towed vehicle in Neutral; the tow speed must be no more than 5 km/h.
  - Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
  - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver.
  - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
  - Only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used, to avoid damages to the vehicle.
  - The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4 meters but less than 10 meters.
  - The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
  - When towing the vehicle, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and

have enough space and no person is close to the towing device.

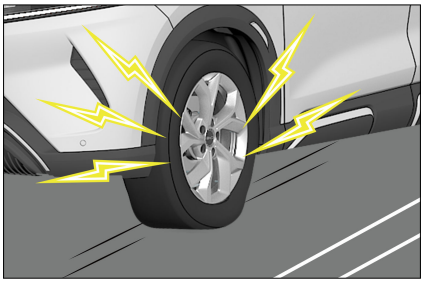
- When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

WARNING

- Rescuing a stuck or high-centered vehicle by using the tow eye is prohibited. Instead, calling a professional rescue or the customer service number is recommended.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle in such cases.

If a Tire Goes Flat

- In case of a flat tire, slow down, keep straight, and drive off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks.
- Engage the EPB and press the "P" button.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.



- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Even a short distance of driving with flat tire can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

In-vehicle tools are stored in a tool box under the trunk cover flap.

These include: warning triangle, reflective vest, lug nut cap removal clamp, tire repair kit (inflator*), and tow eye. (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).

- This vehicle is equipped with a fire extinguisher stored in the glove box.

REMINDER

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

Placing the Warning Triangle

The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to

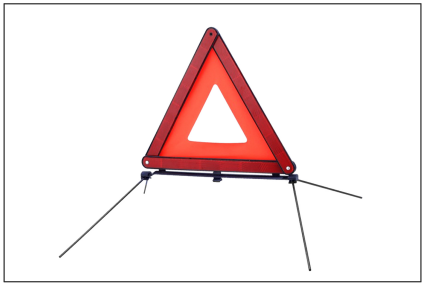
avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

REMINDER

- When parking for repair, remember to place a hazard warning sign in accordance with local codes. The red side of the triangular warning sign should face the oncoming vehicles to warn them to avoid danger.
- After use, recover the warning triangle for future use.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



Using Tire Repair Kit*

- The tire sealant is used to seal small cuts, especially tread cuts or punctures. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service center, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tire is not deflated.

WARNING

- The tire sealant is only suitable for repairing minor damages of tires.

WARNING

If a wheel is damaged, do not use the tire sealant.

- Tire sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapor.

In case of contact with tire sealant:

- If tire sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tire sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

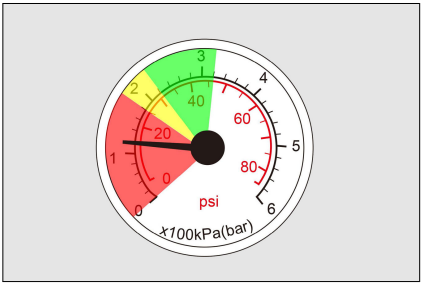
Using the tire repair kit

- Refer to the labels on the inflator and tire sealant bottle for usage of the kit.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle's 12 V socket, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator. The tire sealant is then filled through the inflator hose into the tire along with air.

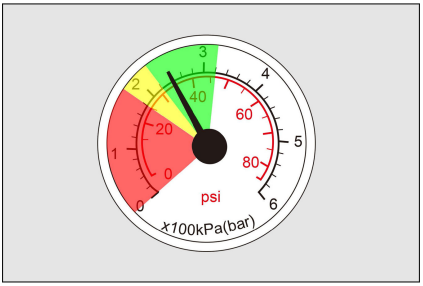
REMINDER

- Make sure the inflator switch is off before plugging into the 12V socket of the vehicle.
- Do not use the inflator continuously for more than 10 minutes at a time.

- Observe the tire pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 180 kPa (1.8 bar) within 10 minutes (red area shown in the illustration), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



- When the tire pressure is between 180–320 kPa (1.8–3.2 bar) (green and yellow areas shown in the illustration), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h within one minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, to let the tire sealant evenly distributed within the tire.



- Stop to check the repaired tire and the tire pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure is greater than 220 kPa (2.2 bar), drive to the nearest service center at a speed below 80 km/h.
  - If the tire pressure is between 130–220 kPa (1.3–2.2 bar), repeat the process to fill the tire sealant into the tire and observe the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 130 kPa (1.3 bar), contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- Using tire repair kit on damaged tires is only an emergency solution. Please change the tires at a professional repair center as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that tire sealant has been used.
- After the use of the tire repair kit, it is recommended to purchase new tire sealant and inflation hoses at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.

REMINDER

- Do not exceed the 80 km/h maximum speed limit and replace flat tires as soon as possible. Do not drive further if the vehicle experiences strong vibration, unstable performance, or noise.
- Avoid impact or compression of the tire sealant to ensure stable performance.
- It is recommended to replace the tire sealant when it approaches the shelf life on the packaging, or has been impacted/compressed.

08 SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle Data..... 228
Other Information..... 232
Declarations of Conformity..... 234

Vehicle Data

Specifications

Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length (mm)	4310
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1830
Height (mm)	1675
Wheelbase (mm)	2620
Front track (mm)	1570
Rear track (mm)	1570
Front overhang (mm)	863
Rear overhang (mm)	827
Approach angle (°)	18
Departure angle (°)	23

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter
Curb weight (kg)	1720
Front axle load (kg)	890
Rear axle load (kg)	830
Maximum allowable total mass (kg)	2140
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1020
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1120
Number of occupants (persons)	5

Drive motor

Item	Parameter
Model	TZ200XSBH

Item	Parameter
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	Front-wheel drive
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	55/4040/130
Peak power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	135/16000/280

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter
Maximum design speed (km/h)	160
Max. gradeability (%)	30
Power consumption per 100 km under comprehensive working conditions (kWh/100 km)	17.4(WLTP)

REMINDER

- The actual energy consumption depends on factors such as vehicle conditions, road conditions, and driving habits.

Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter
Tire specification	215/60 R17
Tire pressure (kPa)	270
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	⩽10

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber (°)	-0.9±0.75
Total front wheel toe-in (°)	0.116±0.16
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	11.47±0.75

Item	Parameter
Kingpin caster angle (°)	3.23±0.75
Rear wheel camber (°)	-1.07±0.75
Total rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.170±0.16

Braking system

Item	Parameter
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1~5
Front brake disc standard thickness (mm)	26
Front brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	24
Rear brake disc standard thickness (mm)	10
Rear brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	8
Front friction plate standard thickness (mm)	10
Minimum thickness of front friction plate (mm)	2
Standard thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	8.5
Rear friction plate minimum thickness (mm)	2

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	181

Recommended oil type and amount

Item	Parameter
Gear transmission oil type	BOT384;BOT383;W5
Transmission gear oil amount (mL)	600±50
Motor coolant type	Glycol organic acid antifreezing coolant -40℃
Motor coolant amount (L)	3.7±0.5
Brake fluid type	DOT4 or HZY6

Item	Parameter
Brake fluid amount (mL)	1050±50

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may affect vehicle performance, and could result in malfunctions or component damage.

Seats (when measuring cushion depth)

Item	Parameter
Seatback angle set for front seats	23°±1°
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats	200 mm forward and 60 mm backward from designed position; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	Seatback 7.5° forward and 42.5° backward from the designed position
Seatback angle set for rear seats	27°±1°
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seats	4.25° forward
Normal service conditions of seatbacks	27°±1°

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

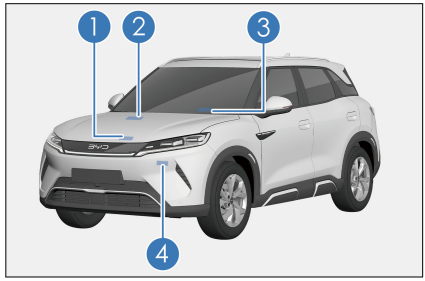
Positions of attached VIN:

① On the left side above the lock ring of the front hood inner panel

② On the front side of the motor

③ On the left front corner of the upper dashboard body

④ On the sheet metal surface of the front bumper beam

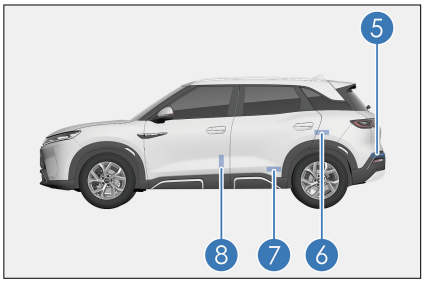


⑤ On the left side of the trunk sheet metal

⑥ On the sheet metal surface of the left rear wheel envelope.

⑦ On the sheet metal surface inside the left rear door sill

⑧ On the sheet metal surface at the lower left corner of the front left door



Position of engraved VIN:

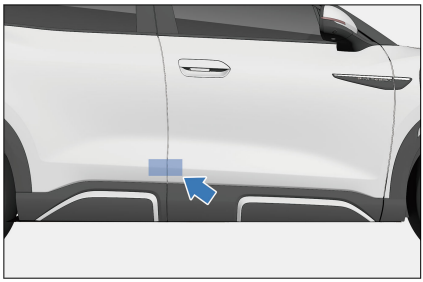
VIN is engraved under the front passenger's seat.

After connecting the VDS, Vehicle Identification Number(VIN) can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



Vehicle Nameplate

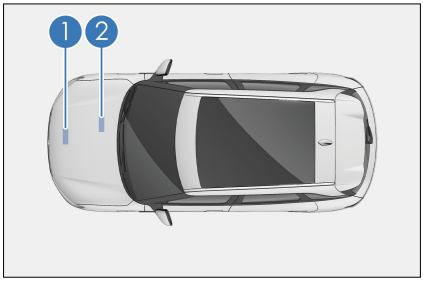
The vehicle nameplate is located under the right B-pillar.



Model and Serial Number of Drive Motor

① The model and serial number of drive motor are attached on the inner panel of the hood.

② The model and serial number of the drive motor are engraved on the underside of drive motor housing.

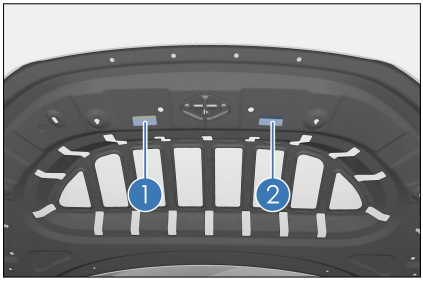


Other Information

Warning Labels

① A/C system and cooling fan label

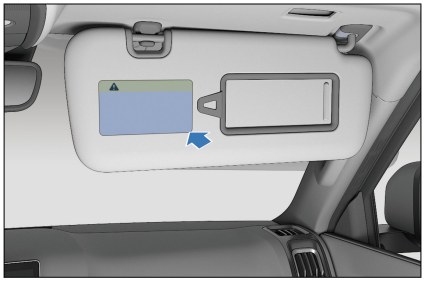
② Battery position label



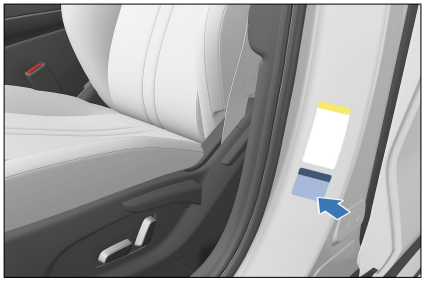
Side airbag warning labels are attached below the left and right B-pillar lock rings.



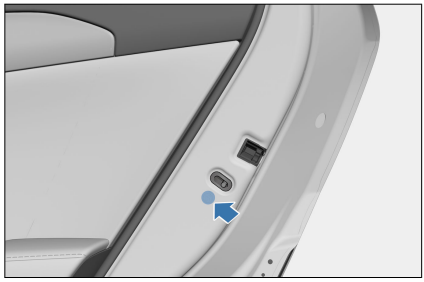
The airbag warning label is printed on the right sun visor.



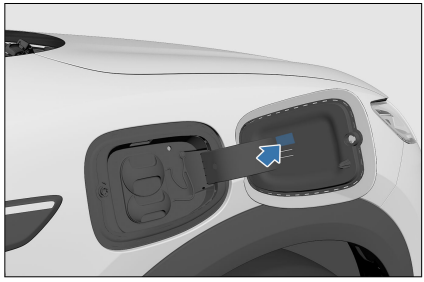
The tire pressure label is attached below the left B-pillar lock ring.



The child protection lock label is engraved on the metal sheet surface on the left/right rear door.



The charging connector use tip label is attached to the inner surface of the charge port door.



Warnings on Strut Mechanisms

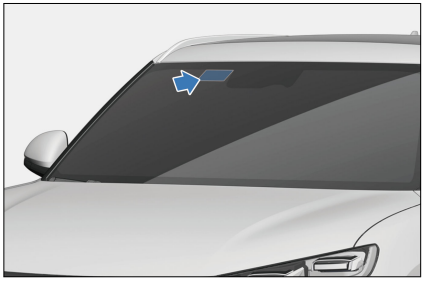
Support mechanisms on this vehicle can be dangerous. Do not disassemble or service them yourself. Labels on these products are defined as follows:

Label	Definition
	Warning
	Pressurized cylinder
	Refer to owner's manual

Label	Definition
	No open flame
	Not to be serviced by users
	Recycle separately (Note: Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.)
	No shaking or cranking

Transponder Mounting Position

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper right of the front windshield.



CAUTION

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

Declarations of Conformity

Declarations of Conformity

Radio Frequency Statement



The vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the RF Modules are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following Internet address: https://cn-prod.byd.com/eu/eu-doc.

Component Name	Frequency	Maximum Power
Tire pressure monitoring transmitter module	434 MHz	87 dBμV/m ± 2 dB
Interior detection antenna	125 KHz	10 W
Electronic Smart Key	434 MHz	10 dBm
High-frequency module	434 MHz	0.48 W
ECALL GPS antenna	1559 MHz～1605 MHz	0.05 W
ECALL 4G antenna	701 MHz～960 MHz	
	1.71 GHz～2.69 GHz	
NFC device	13.56 MHz	2 W
Bluetooth host	2.402 GHz～2.480 GHz	8 dBm
Wi-Fi hotspot device	2.402 GHz～2.482 GHz	16 dBm
	5.17 GHz～5.835 GHz	
Network communication antenna (4G)	698 MHz～960 MHz	/
	1.71 GHz～2.69 GHz	
	3.3 GHz～3.8 GHz	
	4.4 GHz～5 GHz	
Network communication host (4G)	700～2600 MHz	23 dBm
FM radio antenna amplifier	76MHz～108 MHz	0.24 W
FM radio broadcasting host		0.8 W
DAB antenna amplifier	170 MHz～240 MHz	0.24 W

Component Name	Frequency	Maximum Power
DAB box		1.5 W
Four-in-one antenna (GPS, 4G, WiFi/BT)	1559 MHz～1605 MHz (GPS antenna)	0.03 W
	698 MHz～960 MHz 1.71 GHz～2.69 GHz 3.3 GHz～3.8 GHz 4.4 GHz～5 GHz (4G antenna)	
	2.4 GHz～2.5 GHz (WiFi/BT antenna)	
MmWave Radars	77 GHz~78 GHz	2.5 W
AM antenna amplifier	522 KHz～1800 KHz	0.6 W
AM host		0.8 W

Smart Key Statement

	Uzbekistan Model: D0-92/D1-92
	EU countries Model: D0-92/D1-92

ANATEL 13120-22-14807	Brazil Model: D0-92/D1-92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

MmWave Radars Statement

CE	EU countries Certificate ID: T.2023.12.0013
E24 10R-06 XXXX	EU R10 Certificate ID: E24*10R06/02*6114*00

Numerics

12 V Auxiliary Power..... 196

A

A/C Settings..... 190
A/C System Maintenance..... 212
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 160
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*.... 122
Adaptive Front Light (AFL)*..... 68
Adjusting Side Mirrors..... 66
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually..... 62
Airbag Overview..... 14
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 26
Around View Monitor (AVM)*..... 163
Around View Monitoring (AVM).... 161
Auto Power On/Off*..... 107
Automatic Anti-glare Rearview Mirror*..... 65
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)* 139
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 112
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 205

B

Brake Fluid..... 211
Break-in Period..... 99

C

Cargo Cover..... 198
Carrying Luggage..... 102
Center Console Cubby..... 193
Charge Port Immobilizer System... 92
Charging Safety Warnings..... 78
Check before Charging..... 82
Child Protection Lock..... 55
Child Restraint System..... 21
Coolant..... 210
Corrosion Prevention..... 203

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 26
Discharging Device*..... 90
Door Bins..... 192
Door Open Warning (DOW)*. 150, 151
Driver Monitoring System (DMS).. 158
Driving Precautions..... 113
Driving Safety Precautions..... 100
Driving Safety Systems..... 168

E

Electronic Smart Key..... 44
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*..... 147
Emergency Shutdown System..... 218
Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key..... 53
Engaging EPB Manually..... 110
EPB Switch..... 110
Exterior Cleaning..... 204
Eyeglass Case*..... 193

F

Fire Prevention..... 105
Front Collision Warning (FCW)*.... 133
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)*... 136
Front Cross Traffic Brake (FCTB)*. 137
Front Cup Holder..... 194
Front Interior Lights..... 75
Front Passenger Airbag Switch..... 72
Function Definition..... 188
Fuses..... 216

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 108
Glove Box..... 193
Grab Handles..... 194

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 71
High-Voltage Battery..... 94

I

If a Tire Goes Flat..... 222
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted 218
If the High-Voltage Battery Leaks. 219
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 220
Indicators/Warning Lights..... 33
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 176
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 22
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*... 130
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*..... 132
Interior Cleaning..... 206
Interior Rearview Mirror..... 65

L

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)*..... 144
LCD Instrument Cluster..... 32
Light Switches..... 67
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 48
Low-Voltage Battery..... 96

M

Maintenance Plan..... 200
Maintenance Schedule Requirements 200
Manual Vehicle Washing..... 204

O

Opening and Closing the Hood.... 210
Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts..... 40

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 203
Parking Assist System..... 165
Power Window Switches..... 69

R

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)*..... 153
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)*.... 154
Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB)*.. 156
Regular Maintenance..... 202
Replacing Wiper Blades..... 64

S

Saving Energy and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 101
SD Card Slot..... 195
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Precautions..... 56
Seatback Pockets..... 193
Self-Maintenance..... 207
Smart Access and Start System..... 54
Smart Charging..... 87
Snow Chains..... 115
Specifications..... 228
Starting the Vehicle..... 106
Steering Assist Mode Settings..... 62
Steering Wheel Switches..... 59
Suggestions for Vehicle Use..... 100
Sun Visor..... 194

T

Tire..... 213
Tire Pressure Monitoring..... 159
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*.... 142
Transponder Mounting..... 234

U

USB Ports..... 195

Using Seat Belts..... 12

V

Vehicle Fire Rescue..... 220
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 231
Vehicle Servicing..... 202
Vehicle Storage Precautions..... 209

W

Wading into Water..... 104
Warning Labels..... 232
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 71
Windshield Washer..... 212
Windshield Wipers and Washer..... 62
Wiper Blades..... 212
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 196

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
EDR	Event Data Recorder	EPB	Electronic Parking Brake
AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold	ECU	Electronic Control Unit
ISOFIX	International Standards Organization Fix	ABS	Antilock Braking System
SPORT	Sport	ECO	Ecology, Conservation, Optimization
MAX	Maximum	NORMAL	Normal
AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	E-Call	Emergency Call
SOC	State of Charge	ISLC	Intelligent Speed Limit Control
TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition	EPS	Electrical Power Steering
ICC	Intelligent Cruise Control	IHBC	Intelligent High Beam Control
AEB	Automatic Emergency Braking	FCW	Forward Collision Warning
BSA	Blind Spot Assist	BSD	Blind Spot Detection
RCTA	Rear Cross Traffic Alert	RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking
RCW	Rear Collision Warning	DOW	Door Open Warning
DMS	Driver Monitoring System	TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring System
AVM	Automatic Vehicle Monitor	TCS	Traction Control System
MCB	Multi-Collision Brake	MAX	Maximum
MIN	Minimum	ESC	Electronic Stability Controller
VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control	HHC	Hill Hold Control
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist	CDP	Controller Deceleration Parking
HDC	Hill Descent Control	CST	Comfort Parking
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number		

BUILD YOUR DREAMS

Edition date: 11.2025 EN_V0